AL-BAHER

# CONNECT

الصف الخامس الابتدائي

First Term



5th Primary

بتصريح و تحت إشراف

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

2025

Parents' Guide

# Contents

# Reading and Writing Skills

## Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

### *How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" question.*

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

**قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:**

**أ. ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:**

**(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)**

**ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:**

- تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about "..................".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about ".................."

Or: The text talks about "..................".

- تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word ".................." has the same meaning as "..................".

Or: The underlined word ".................." is the opposite of the word "..................".

Or: The underlined word ".................." refers to "..................".

Or: The underlined word ".................." means "..................".

- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

**ب. سؤالان من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:**

**ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:**

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer استنتج
- Mention اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص:

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

# Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

## 1 How to write a paragraph: كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

1. اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا ١ سم.
2. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة.
4. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوّع بدايات الجمل.
6. استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
7. استخدم جمل بسيطة.
8. حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

## 2 How to write an email: كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,
How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. ← جملة افتتاحية

........................................ موضوع الرسالة ........................................

- Write back soon and tell me your news.
- Best wishes. ← جملة ختامية

Yours,
اسم المرسل

Send A $ Saved

## 3 *How to write a biography:* كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية:

1. Introduce the person, giving their names. - قم بتقديم الشخص (ذاكراً اسمه).

- (Name of a person) ........ is ........
- He / she was born on + تاريخ الميلاد ........
- He / She began ........

2. Say why they are famous and give details about them.

- اذكر لماذا هم مشهورين واعط تفاصيل عنهم.

- He / She was the first ........ to + inf.
- He / She was / is successful because ........
- He / She won ........

3. Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important. - اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام أو مهمين.

- He / She won ........
- He / She is also ........ / Moreover / As well as this, he / she is ........

4. Say what you think could happen next for their career.

- اذكر ما تعتقد أنه سيحدث لهم في حياتهم العملية فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most ........

## 4 *How to write a blog:* كيف تكتب مدونة:

1. اكتب تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة المدونة.
2. قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
3. صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
4. صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
5. اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / Me).
6. استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
7. اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (In my opinion) / (I think that).

# Punctuation Marks

علامات الترقيم

## Capital letters

الحروف الكبيرة




توضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة والضمير (I) والاختصارات.

1. Tom is from the USA.
2. I visited the Egyptian Museum in May.
3. Today is Monday.
4. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.

## Period (Full Stop)

النقطة



توضع في نهاية الجملة.

1. He is good at football.
2. I don't like fish.

## Question Mark

علامة الاستفهام



توضع في نهاية السؤال.

1. Why did you go to the library?
2. Can I have some water, please?

## Exclamation Mark



علامة التعجب



توضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب و التعجب

- Hi!  - Wow!

## Apostrophe

الفصلة العليا



توضع مع (s) الملكية.

1. Ahmed's car is black.

توضع في الاختصارات.

2. I'd like some apples, please.

## Comma

الفاصلة السفلى

1. I am good at football, swimming, and tennis. توضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات
2. Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't. توضع بعد (Yes / No).
3. I'm great at drawing, but I'm bad at singing. توضع قبل (but)
4. Can I have some tea, please? توضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

# LET'S REMEMBER

## Social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي



cell phone
الهاتف المحمول



password
كلمة المرور



do research
يقوم بالبحث




text message
رسالة نصية

## Transportation وسائل النقل




metro
مترو



taxi
تاكسي



boat
قارب



tram
ترام

## Environment البيئة



drought
جفاف



flood
فيضان



pollution
التلوث

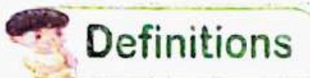


traffic
حركة المرور

Help your child revise these words. ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.



Let's remember



## Definitions تعريفات

| | |
|---|---|
| drought | when there isn't enough water |
| flood | when there is too much water |
| password | the special code you need to access your computer |
| traffic | lots of cars on the road |
| tram | public transportation that runs on lines, but isn't a train |
| taxi | a car you can ride in the street, which someone else drives |
| pollution | when there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air |
| text message | a small note you write to someone on your cell phone |

* **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

### Your favorite transportation

..........................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................

..........................................................................................................



Help your child identify these definitions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه التعريفات.

# The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

## Form التكوين

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل، وله شكلان:

❶ أفعال منتظمة (Regular verbs) وتتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) للفعل.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| like يُحب → liked | | play يلعب → played | |
| walk يمشي → walked | | study يذاكر → studied | |

❷ أفعال غير منتظمة (Irregular verbs).

| | |
|---|---|
| is يكون → was | have يمتلك → had |
| swim يسبح → swam | do يفعل → did |
| see يرى → saw | go يذهب → went |

## Usage الاستخدام

للتعبير عن فعل بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

e.g. - I went to the park last Friday.

- They played football yesterday.

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | |
|---|---|
| yesterday أمس | last (week , month ,...) الماضي (الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) |
| ago منذ | in the past في الماضي |

e.g. - We played tennis yesterday.

- He went to the zoo last week.

Help your child revise the Past Simple Tense. ساعد طفلك أن يراجع زمن الماضي البسيط.



Let's remember

# Modals الأفعال الناقصة

**can + inf.** يستطيع

للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء ما في المضارع.

e.g. I can swim.

**can't + inf.** لا يستطيع

للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء ما في المضارع.

e.g. I can't ride a bike.

**should + inf.** ينبغي أن

للنصيحة بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. You should get to the train station by 10 am to catch the train.

**shouldn't + inf.** ينبغي ألا

للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء ما.

e.g. Wael shouldn't give his password to his friends.

**must + inf.** يجب أن

للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما.

e.g. We must plant more trees to get fresher air.

**mustn't + inf.** يجب ألا

للتعبير عن المنع والتحريم.

e.g. You mustn't pollute water.

**need to + inf.** يجب أن

للتعبير عن الضرورة.

e.g. You need to look right and left before you cross the road.



Help your child revise some modals.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع بعض الأفعال الناقصة.



# Writing

When we write a paragraph, we use some phrases such as:
عندما نكتب فقرة نستخدم بعض العبارات مثل:

| | |
|---|---|
| Many people think ... | يعتقد كثير من الناس ... |
| They also say ... | يقولون أيضا ... |
| But, on the other hand, ... | ولكن، من ناحية أخرى، ... |
| In general, ... In conclusion ... | عموما، ... ختاما ... |
| In my opinion ... | في رأيي ... |

**You are playing a computer game with your friends.**

Read about the pros and cons of playing it.

Use the following phrases.

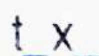
| Pros مميزات | Cons مساوئ |
|---|---|
| lots of fun | waste time |
| help us think about solutions | some games don't teach us anything |
| we can learn from some of them | |

## Model paragraph

Many people think playing a computer game makes lots of fun. They also say it helps us think about solutions. But, on the other hand, it wastes time. Some games don't teach us anything. In general, we can learn from some of them. In my opinion it is useful.




## 1 Look and complete. انظر وأكمل.





t_x_ dr_ _ght m_t_o b_ _t






pa_ _word c_ll p_one t_ _m tr_ff_c

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They .................................................. to the cinema yesterday.
   a) go b) went c) going d) goes
2. The movie .................................................. very good.
   a) am b) are c) were d) was
3. We .................................................. plant more trees.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't
4. You .................................................. put on a jacket. It's cold.
   a) mustn't b) need c) should d) shouldn't
5. Can you swim? - No, I .................................................. .
   a) can b) can't c) mustn't d) shouldn't



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك ن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 I ............................................................ English yesterday.

a) study b) studied c) studying d) studies

7 Last night, we ............................................................ a party.

a) have b) are c) has d) had

8 You ............................................................ put on your seat belt.

a) must b) can c) mustn't d) shouldn't

9 Dina ............................................................ swim in the sea.

a) have b) is c) can't d) needs

10 You ............................................................ to drink a lot of water.

a) can b) need c) must d) should

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Maged and Lama are brother and sister. They had a nice weekend. They played football together in the park on Friday morning. Then Lama helped her mom to clean the house. And Maged walked with his dad to the supermarket. On Friday evening, Lama went to the cinema with her friend's family and they saw a movie. It was very good. Maged went to the beach along the coast path and swam in the sea with his dad. The following day, they went to the zoo together. They saw lots of interesting animals. In the evening Maged studied for a test and Lama did her homework. It was a lovely weekend!

**A) Choose the correct word.**

1 ............................................................ helped mom to clean the house.

a) Maged b) Lama c) Dad d) Hend

2 It was a ............................................................ weekend.

a) lovely b) bad c) terrible d) sad

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3 Where did they play football? ............................................................

4 Who did Lama go to the cinema with? ............................................................


Unit (1)
We plant our food
نحن نزرع طعامنا
In this unit, the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...
. listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
. listen to a conversation about favorite food.
. practice making suggestions with how about.
. read a fairy tale.
يقرأ قصة خرافية
. practice saying vowel sounds.
يتدرب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة
. understand decimal fractions.
يفهم الكسور العشرية
. write a recipe.
يكتب وصفة (طهي)
. research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.




# FOOD AND DRINK

## Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

### Food & Drink

الطعام و الشراب



beans
فول



limes
ليمون حامض (أخضر)



onions
بصل



carrots
جزر



chocolate
شوكولاته



lemons
ليمون (أصفر)



pineapples
أناناس



eggs
بيض



coconuts
جوز هند



mango
مانجو

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| healthy | صحي | a little | قليل | a lot | كثير |
| unhealthy | غير صحي | too | أيضا | potatoes | بطاطس |
| chickens | دجاج | fresh | طازج | garden | حديقة |
| favorite | مفضل | pot | إناء / وعاء | uncle | عم / خال |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| love | يحب | love d | collect | يجمع | collect ed |
| plant | يزرع | plant ed | like | يحب | like d |
| pick | يقطف | pick ed | | | |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| think | يعتقد - يفكر | thought | eat | يأكل | ate |
| have / has | يملك | had | sell | يبيع | sold |
| grow | يزرع / ينمو | grew | buy | يشتري | bought |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| That's easy! | هذا سهل | in the garden | في الحديقة |
| at the market | في السوق | It's OK to + مصدر | لا بأس أن .... |
| on the ground | على الأرض | grow on trees | ينمو على الأشجار |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Dina:** What's your favorite food, Farida?

ما هو طعامك المفضل، يا فريدة؟

**Fareeda:** That's easy! It's chocolate.

هذا أمر سهل! إنها الشوكولاتة.

**Dina:** Mmm ... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

ممم.... أنا أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك؟

**Fareeda:** I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

أعتقد أنه لا بأس أن تأكل قليلًا منها. ولكن بالفعل، إنها ليست صحية إذا أكلتِ الكثير منها.

**Dina:** What's your favorite healthy food?

ما هو طعامك الصحي المفضل؟

**Fareeda:** Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

أوه، أنا أحب الدجاج وأحب السمك. لكن المفضل لدي هو المانجو. لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.

**Dina:** I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

أنا أحب المانجو أيضًا، ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون أخضر حامض وشجرة ليمون.

**Fareeda:** My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

يزرع عمي البصل والبطاطس ولديه دجاج أيضًا، ويجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم وأحيانًا يبيعه في السوق.

### Did you know ?

Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

لا ينمو الأناناس على الشجر! إنه ينمو على الأرض.








# Language Functions



## Asking about favorites:
السؤال عن الأشياء المفضلة.

What's your favorite + noun (اسم)?

e.g. A: What's your favorite food? B: It's chicken.



## Expressing likes:
التعبير عن الأشياء التي نحبها.

I like / love + noun (اسم).

e.g. I like fish.

e.g. I love mango.



## Expressing opinions:
التعبير عن الآراء.

I think ..........

e.g. I think it's OK to eat a little chocolate.

**Look, follow and notice.** انظر وتتبع ولاحظ.

***How we grow lemons*** كيف نزرع الليمون



1 The girl is planting a lemon seed in a pot.



2 The lemon tree is starting to grow.



3 Some flowers are growing.



4 There are lemons on the tree.



5 The girl is picking the lemons.



6 She is making lemonade.



Help your child identify how we grow lemons.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية زراعة الليمون.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite food is ............................................................ .

   a) chocolate  b) eggs  c) beans  d) fish

2. It is ............................................................ to eat a lot of chocolate.

   a) healthy  b) unhealthy  c) good  d) nice

3. I eat ............................................................ chocolate.

   a) a lot  b) much  c) a little  d) many

4. My friend Fareeda likes chicken and ............................................ .

   a) meat  b) rice  c) potatoes  d) fish

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I love chocolate, ............................................................ .

   a) to  b) too  c) two  d) so

2. Chocolate is ............................................................ , so I eat a little.

   a) healthy  b) unhealthy  c) good  d) easy

3. We have a mango tree in our ............................................ .

   a) garden  b) library  c) classroom  d) bathroom

4. ............................................................ give us eggs.

   a) Cows  b) Goats  c) Chickens  d) Cats

5. My uncle sells eggs at the ............................................ .

   a) school  b) market  c) library  d) hospital

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

unhealthy - potatoes - healthy - chocolate - kitchen

My name's Hana. I'm in grade five. I like ..........(1).................. food. I help my mum in the ..............(2).............. We make chickens, beans and ..........(3).............. My brother likes to eat chocolate. I like .....(4)..........., too, but I don't eat a lot. At the weekend, we visit our uncle. He grows trees in his garden. He has a lemon and lime tree.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. food - What - favorite - your - is - ?

..............................................................................................................

2. a mango - garden - He - in - the - tree - has - .

..............................................................................................................

3. in - We - garden - our - mangoes - grow - .

..............................................................................................................

4. grows - My - onions - uncle - potatoes - and - .

..............................................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what's your favorite food, fareeda?

..............................................................................................................

⇨ my uncle grows onions

..............................................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Your favorite food

Guiding words:

( fish - healthy - delicious )




# MY SHOPPING LIST



## Key Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| grapes | عنب | pizza | بيتزا | honey | عسل |
| shopping list | قائمة تسوق | ful medames | فول مدمس | yogurt | زبادي |
| mahalabia | مهلبية | french fries | بطاطس مقلية | | |



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| bowl | سلطانية | cookies | كعك محلي | diet | رجيم (نظام غذائي) |
| unpack | يفرغ الحقيبة | burger | برجر | delicious | لذيذ |
| cucumbers | خيار | dessert | تحلية / الحلو (بعد الأكل) | nuts | مكسرات |
| price | ثمن | juicy | كثير العصارة | customer | زبون |
| cupboard | دولاب / خزانة | fried eggs | بيض مقلي | diaries | يوميات / مذكرات |
| lucky | محظوظ | boiled eggs | بيض مسلوق | top | قمة |
| nutrients | العناصر الغذائية | market trader | تاجر في السوق | jam | مربى |
| shawerma | شاورما | Om Ali | أم علي | healthy | صحي |
| koshari | كشرى | fruit salad | سلطة فواكه | unhealthy | غير صحي |
| fridge | ثلاجة | market seller | بائع في السوق | dinner | وجبة عشاء |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| for lunch | لوجبة الغداء | balanced diet | نظام غذائي متوازن |
| act out | يمثل / يتصرف | in total | في المجموع الكلي |
| of course | بالطبع | sensible choices | اختيارات منطقية |



Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen, read and role-play.

استمع و اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

**Narrator: 1**

الراوي: 1



Market trader : Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

طماطم جميلة! تعال واشترِ! ماذا عن شراء بعض من الطماطم الحمراء الجميلة؟

Mom : Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

أوه! أعتقد أننا بحاجة إلى بعض الطماطم. كم سعرها؟

Market trader : They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

سعرها جيد: فقط ثلاث جنيهات للكيلو الواحد.

Mom : OK. We'll have a kilogram, please.

حسنًا. سنأخذ كيلو جرام، من فضلك.

Market trader : How about buying some carrots, too?

وماذا عن شراء بعض الجزر أيضًا؟

Mom : No, thank you.

لا، شكرًا لك.

Ibrahim : Mom, please can we have a pineapple?

أمي، من فضلك هل يمكننا أن نشترى ثمرة أناناس؟

Mom : Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

ممممم، نعم، يا إبراهيم! هيا نشترى ثمرة أناناس جيدة وكثيرة العصارة.

Market trader : There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

تفضلوا. سيكون إجمالي ذلك عشرون جنيهًا، من فضلك.



Help your child listen, read and role-play.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ ويتبادل الأدوار.

Narrator: 2 الراوي: ٢

Nada : I really like coming to your house, Grandma.
أنا حقًا أحب القدوم إلى منزلك، يا جدتي.

Grandma : I like it when you visit me, Nada.
وأنا أحب زيارتك لي، يا ندى.

Nada : We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.
ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو في حديقتنا بالمنزل. لدينا شجرة ليمون.

Grandma : I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?
أنا أعرف. أنا محظوظة لامتلاكي شجرة مانجو. هل ترغبين في الحصول على ثمرة مانجو الآن؟

Nada : Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?
نعم، من فضلك! وأود أيضًا أن أتناول المهلبية بالمانجو وجوز الهند التي تعديها لاحقًا. هل لديك أي جوز هند؟

Grandma : Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.
نعم، اشتريت بعضًا منه من السوق هذا الصباح.

Narrator: 3 الراوي: ٣

Mom 2 : Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?
يا أشرف، هل تأتي معي إلى السوق؟

Ashraf : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?
نعم، بالطبع. ما الذي نحتاج أن نشتريه؟

Mom 2 : We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.
نحتاج أن نشترى خبزًا وأرزًا. ماذا تريد أن تتناول على الغداء يوم السبت؟ العم فيصل قادم.

Ashraf : Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!
أوه، أريد كشرى، من فضلك. إنه المفضل لدي!

Mom 2 : OK, are there any onions in the fridge?
حسنًا، هل يوجد أى بصل في الثلاجة؟

Ashraf : No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.
لا، لا يوجد. إذن نحن بحاجة لشراء الخبز والأرز والبصل.

**Narrator: 4** الراوي: ٤

Dad : OK, what do we need to get, Amal?
حسنًا، ما الذي نحتاج أن نشتريه، يا أمل؟

Amal : Mom says three lemons and some eggs.
أمي تقول ثلاث ليمونات وبعض البيض.

Dad : Here are the lemons.
ها هو الليمون.

Amal : The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!
البيض هناك. آوه والشوكولاتة أيضًا!

Dad : Is it on Mom's list?
هل هي في قائمة الأم؟

Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?
لا، ليست موجودة. ولكن هل يمكنني الحصول على البعض، من فضلك؟

Dad : OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal!
حسنا، ولكن لا تأكليها إلا بعد العشاء، يا أمل!

## •• Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.




2
Are there any tomatoes?
Yes, look! There are lots of tomatoes.











Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

## Listen, read and role-play.

استمع واقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Mom : Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

جنى، هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تفريغ الحقائب من فضلك؟

Jana : Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

نعم بالطبع. أوه، جيد، أنت اشتريت مانجو من السوق. أنا أحب المانجو. أوه، واشتريت شوكولاتة. لذيذة!

Mom : Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays - it isn't very healthy.

ضع ذلك في الخزانة من فضلك. إنه للتحلية غدا. نحن فقط نتناول الشوكولاتة أيام السبت - إنها ليست صحية جدًا.

Jana : OK. Where shall I put the cookies?

حسنا. أين أضع الكعك السحري؟

Mom : Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one - they aren't very healthy!

من فضلك ضعيها في الخزانة العلوية. يمكنك تناول واحدة بعد المدرسة غدا - ولكن واحدة فقط - فهي ليست صحية جدا.

Jana : OK, I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.

حسنا. سأضع الموز في وعاء الفاكهة على الطاولة.

Mom : Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

شكرا لك. هل الدجاج في الثلاجة؟ إنه من أجل الشاورما على الغداء اليوم.

Jana : Yes, it's there with the carrots. نعم، إنه موجود مع الجزر.

Mom : Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

شكرا لك، يا جنى. هل تريدين "أم علي" للتحلية الليلة؟ اشتريت كيسا من المكسرات.

Jana : Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!

نعم، من فضلك، يا أمي! إنها المفضلة لدي!

Help your child listen, read and role-play.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ ويتبادل الأدوار.



Unit ( 1 )

## Read the food diaries. From 1 (healthiest) to 3 (unhealthiest).

اقرأ يوميات الطعام. من 1 (الأكثر صحة) إلى 3 (الأقل صحة).

**1**
- **Breakfast:** cheese and bread, cucumber, jam
- **Lunch:** chicken, french fries, rice
- **Dinner:** yogurt and honey, cake

**2**
- **Breakfast:** ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice
- **Lunch:** koshari, salad, an orange
- **Dinner:** yogurt, fruit salad

**3**
- **Breakfast:** 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese
- **Lunch:** burger and french fries
- **Dinner:** pizza

## Tip! نصيحة

**Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.** تأكد أنك تتناول وجبة غذائية متوازنة لكي يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.





### Making suggestions: عمل الاقتراحات

How about + v-ing ......? وماذا عن ....؟

e.g. How about buying some lemons?

Let's + inf. هيا بنا .....

e.g. Let's buy a nice pineapple.

عند قبول الاقتراح نقول:
- Good idea! فكرة جيدة!
- OK. حسنًا.

عند رفض الاقتراح نقول:
- No, thank you. لا، شكرًا لك.
- No, thanks. لا، شكرًا.



### Making offers: عمل عروض

Would you like......? هل تود ...؟

e.g. Would you like some tea? - Yes, please. - No, thank you.



Help your child learn about healthy and unhealthy diets.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الوجبات الصحية وغير الصحية.

# Language Focus

## Countable & Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد

### Countable nouns الأسماء التي تُعد

- هي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع.
- الاسم المفرد هو الذي يُعد ويمكن أن يسبقه (a / an)

- a banana → bananas
- an egg → eggs

### Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تُعد

- هي الأسماء التي ليس لها جمع ولا يمكن عدها.
- الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تسبق بـ (a / an)

- rice
- chocolate
- bread

### A / An

- We use "a" with singular countable nouns that begin with a consonant.

نستخدم (a) مع الأسماء المفردة التي تعد و تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

- a mango
- a pineapple
- a banana

- We use "an" with singular countable nouns that begin with a vowel.

نستخدم (an) مع الأسماء المفردة التي تعد و تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

- an onion
- an egg
- an orange

تذكر: الحروف المتحركة هي (a - e - i - o - u)

Help your child use (a, an with nouns).

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (a, an) مع الأسماء.

## some & any

**some** بعض

- We use "some" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in affirmative sentences.

نستخدم (some) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء التي لا تُعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. - I'd like some apples, please. -I'd like some rice, please.

**any** أي

- We use "any" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences.

نستخدم (any) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة ومع الأسماء التي لا تُعد في الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية.

e.g. - Are there any tomatoes? - We haven't got any milk.

## Note:

- **We use "some" in request and offer questions.**

نستخدم (some) في سؤال الطلب والعرض.

e.g. Can I have some grapes? (Request)

Would you like some chocolate? (Offer)

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'd like ........................ apple, please.
   a) a b) an c) some d) any
2. Do you have ........................ potatoes?
   a) a b) an c) some d) any



Help your child use (some and any with nouns).

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (some and any) مع الأسماء

3. Would you like .................................................. carrots?
   a) a  b) an  c) some  d) any
4. We don't have .................................................. onions.
   a) an  b) some  c) any  d) a
5. Can I have .................................................. banana, please?
   a) a  b) an  c) any  d) some
6. Are there .................................................. apples?
   a) some  b) an  c) a  d) any
7. I'd like some .................................................. .
   a) orange  b) grape  c) grapes  d) onion
8. We have .................................................. chickens for lunch.
   a) a  b) any  c) an  d) some
9. She has .................................................. juice.
   a) an  b) a  c) some  d) any
10. I would like .................................................. pineapple, please.
   a) an  b) a  c) some  d) any

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. There is .................................................. (any) water on the floor.
2. We want .................................................. (a) tea, please.
3. My aunt needs .................................................. (a) onion.
4. There are .................................................. (an) erasers on the table.
5. There aren't .................................................. (some) apples.
6. I saw .................................................. (some) elephant.
7. Would you like .................................................. (any) tea?
8. I eat .................................................. (some) apple every day.
9. We don't need .................................................. (a) coffee.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I have .................... and fruit salad.
   a) yogurt b) beans c) chips d) rice
2. My mom and I go to the .................... .
   a) zoo b) market c) library d) school
3. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables and rice for .................... .
   a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) supper
4. My sister and I always help our mom in the .................... .
   a) bathroom b) living room c) garden d) kitchen

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How about .................... some tomatoes?
   a) buy b) buying c) buys d) bought
2. Can we have .................... pineapple?
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
3. There are .................... carrots on the table.
   a) any b) an c) some d) a
4. .................... you like a mango?
   a) Should b) Will c) Can d) Would
5. I don't have .................... french fries.
   a) a b) any c) an d) some
6. Are there .................... apples?
   a) some b) a c) any d) an
7. I'd like .................... orange.
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
8. Would you like .................... carrot?
   a) a b) some c) any d) an



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

9. I'd like some ..........................................
   a) tomato   b) grape   c) oranges   d) onion
10. We don't have .......................................... pineapples.
   a) a   b) an   c) any   d) some

## 3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Would you like .................................. (an) oranges?
2. Are there .................................. (some) bananas?
3. I would like .................................. (some) apple, please.
4. Is there .................................. (some) carrots?
5. Is there .................................. (a) butter?
6. I have .................................. (an) orange juice.
7. I would like .................................. (a) rice, please.
8. We don't have .................................. (an) onions.
9. We need to buy .................................. (a) bread.
10. Have you got .................................. (some) coconuts?

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. got - We - grapes - any - haven't - .
..........................................
2. about - pineapples - How - buying - some - ?
..........................................
3. you - What - would - like - ?
..........................................
4. I - Can - apple, - have - please - an - ?
..........................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ nada wants chocolate for dessert
..........................................



# Lesson (3) JACK AND THE BEANSTALK



## Key Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| beanstalk | ساق الفاصوليا | castle | قلعة | giant | عملاق |
| chop | يقطع | grab | يجذب / ينتزع | cage | قفص |



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| poor | فقير | special | خاص/ مميز | clouds | سُحُب |
| rich | غني | happily | بسعادة | coins | عملات معدنية |
| angry | غاضب | free | حُر | price | سعر |
| hungry | جوعان | top | قمة | axe | بلطة - فأس |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| climb | يتسلق | climbed | meet | يقابل | met |
| count | يعد | counted | make | يصنع | made |
| talk | يتكلم | talked | say | يقول | said |
| save | ينقذ | saved | throw | يرمي/يقذف | threw |
| reach | يصل | reached | think | يعتقد | thought |
| stay | يقيم | stayed | go | يذهب | went |
| cry | يبكي / يصيح | cried | fall | يقع/ يسقط | fell |
| grab | يجذب / ينتزع | grabbed | run away | يهرب | ran away |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| on the way to | في الطريق إلى | a magic hen | دجاجة سحرية |
| go up | يصعد لأعلى | a kind boy | ولد طيب |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a golden egg | بيضة ذهبية | at last | أخيرًا - في النهاية |
| ever after | منذ ذلك الحين | stay with | يبقى مع |
| throw out of | يرمي من | thank you for | شكرًا لك على |
| as soon as | بمجرد أن | next to | بجوار |

## Definitions تعريفات

| | |
|---|---|
| giant | a very, very big person |
| grab | to pick something up quickly |
| castle | a very large building built a long time ago |
| chop | to cut something down |
| cage | a box in which we keep animals |

## Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

### Jack and the Beanstalk جاك وساق الفاصوليا

1



Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow,"said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

كان جاك وأمه فقيرين جدًا. قالت الأم لجاك " اذهب إلى السوق وقم ببيع آخر بقرة لدينا. من فضلك بعها بسعر جيد، يا جاك!"

Help your child listen and read the fairy tale.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة الخرافية (الخيالية).



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.

وفي الطريق الى السوق، قابل جاك رجلا عجوزا. قال الرجل العجوز " لدى حبات فاصوليا مميزة. هل تريد أن تشتريها؟ ستجعلك غنيًا!"



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

اشترى جاك الحبوب. لكن كانت أمه غاضبة جدًا. وقالت " نحن نحتاج طعامًا يا جاك وليس حبات فاصوليا! وألقتهم الأم من النافذة " قال جاك " آسف يا أمي. اعتقدت أنها ستساعدنا". ذهب جاك إلى فراشه وهو حزين وجوعان جدًا.



The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

وفي الصباح التالي رأى جاك ساق فاصوليا طويل جدًا في الحديقة. كانت مرتفعة إلى السحاب. تسلق جاك ساق الفاصوليا. وفي القمة رأى قلعة. دخل جاك القلعة ليرى ما إذا كان هناك احد يحتاج إلى المساعدة.



Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.

وفجأة رأى جاك عملاقًا ضخمًا. وكان يعد أكياسًا بها عملات ذهبية. وكان هناك دجاجة على الأرضية. وكانت الدجاجة داخل قفص وبجوار الدجاجة بعض البيض الذهبي.

Help your child listen and read the fairy tale.
ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأ القصة الخرافية (الخيالية).




The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!" "I'll help you!" said Jack.

بدت الدجاجة حزينة جدًا. كانت دجاجة سحرية، وكانت تستطيع أن تتكلم. وصرخت الدجاجة "ساعدني من فضلك. أنقذني من هذا العملاق المخيف!" قال لها جاك "سأساعدك".




As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

بمجرد أن وصل جاك لحديقته جذب فأسه وقام بقطع ساق الفاصوليا. وسقط العملاق على الأرض وفر هاربًا. كانت الدجاجة سعيدة! ونالت حريتها أخيرًا.




"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

قالت الدجاجة " شكرًا على مساعدتك يا جاك. أنت ولد طيب. من فضلك هل يمكنني أن أقيم معك أنت ووالدتك؟" لم يعد جاك وأمه فقراء. وقاما ببيع البيض الذهبي لشراء الطعام. وعاش جاك وأمه في سعادة دائمة.

## *Think and discuss with your partner.*

فكر وتناقش مع زميلك.

**- Did you like the story? Why? Why not?**

I liked the story because it's interesting.

I didn't like the story because it's boring.

Help your child listen and read the fairy tale.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة الخرافية (الخيالية).

# Vowel sounds الأصوات المتحركة

## short vowels

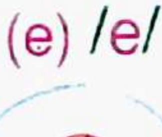
(a) /æ/





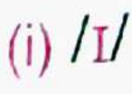
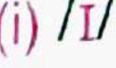
candy mango

(e) /e/


egg

(i) /ɪ/


milk fish

## long vowels

(a-e) /eɪ/





cake bake grapes

(ea) /iː/




bean meat

(i-e) /aɪ/




rice lime

**Some words sound the same but have different spellings.**

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن الهجاء مختلف.

| a-e /eɪ/ | ai /eɪ/ | | ay /eɪ/ | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cake | rain | tail | gray | play |
| snake | snail | pain | stay | say |

Help your child identify these vowel sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات المتحركة.

# MATH

## Decimal fractions الكسور العشرية

**A fraction:** is a part of whole.

الكسر: هو جزء من الواحد الصحيح.

$$\frac{1}{6}$$

numerator → البسط (جزء من الكل)

denominator → المقام (كل شيء)

**In decimal fractions, the numerator is divided by the denominator.**

في الكسور العشرية تتم قسمة البسط على المقام.

$\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$ $\frac{2}{5} = 2 \div 5 = 0.4$

**Did you know ?** **0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400**



### Look and say.

انظر وقُل.

$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$

$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$



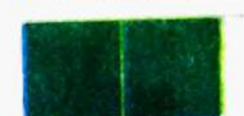
$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$



$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$



$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$





Help your child learn decimal fraction.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم الكسور العشرية.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jack was a ........................................ boy.
   a) bad  b) kind  c) naughty  d) foolish
2. Jack met a/an ........................................ man.
   a) young  b) old  c) good  d) sick
3. Jack found that the beans grew into a ........................ stalk.
   a) small  b) tiny  c) giant  d) little
4. Jack climbed the stalk and found a hen in a ........................ .
   a) tent  b) farm  c) box  d) cage

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We buy and sell things at the ........................................ .
   a) market  b) hospital  c) club  d) library
2. A ........................................ is a very large building.
   a) cage  b) castle  c) tent  d) coin
3. I lost my cell phone so my father was ........................ .
   a) angry  b) happy  c) kind  d) giant
4. To cut something means to ........................................ it.
   a) get  b) boil  c) mix  d) chop
5. They can eat ........................................ .
   a) beans  b) cages  c) axes  d) castles
6. To ........................................ is to pick up something quickly.
   a) chop  b) grab  c) buy  d) play
7. Please, save me from this ........................................ giant.
   a) cute  b) terrible  c) small  d) little



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!" On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man. Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Jack and his mother were very ..............................................
   a) rich b) poor c) strong d) tall
2. Jack bought the ..............................................
   a) rice b) wheat c) beans d) corn

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who met Jack on the way to the market? ..............................
4. How was Jack when he went to the bed? ..............................

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. for - me - Thank - helping - you - .

..............................................................................

2. eggs - They - sold - to buy - the - food - golden - .

..............................................................................

3. chopped - Jack - beanstalk - the - down - .

..............................................................................

4. want - buy - beans - Do - to - you - these - ?

..............................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ jack went to the market to sell the cow

..............................................................................




# WRITING & PROJECT

## 🎧 Listen and say.

استمع وقل.


weigh out
يزن


bake
يخبز


pour
يصب


mix
يخلط


cut
يقطع


boil
يغلي




الكلمات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sugar | سكر | yogurt | زبادي |
| coconut | جوز الهند | almonds | لوز |
| basbousa | بسبوسة | lentil soup | شوربة عدس |
| honey | عسل | ful medames | فول مدمس |
| saucepan | قِدر - إناء | knife | سكينة |
| oven | فرن | cup | |

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| semolina | دقيق سميد | mixture | خليط - مزيج | share | يشارك |
| melted butter | زبدة مذابة | syrup | شراب - عصير | seller | بائع |
| baking powder | مسحوق خبز | lemon juice | عصير ليمون | poster | ملصق |
| cocktail juice | عصير كوكتيل | fruit salad | سلطة فواكه | dishes | أطباق |
| classmate | زميل الدراسة | recipes | وصفات الطعام | diamond | ماسه |

tsp = teaspoon ملعقة صغيرة

tbsp = tablespoon ملعقة كبيرة

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| cook | يطبخ | cooked | need | يحتاج | needed |
| bake | يخبز | baked | talk | يتحدث | talked |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| make | يصنع | made | draw | يرسم | drew |
| find | يجد | found | tell | يخبر | told |
| think | يفكر - يعتقد | thought | learn | يتعلم | learnt |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| turn on | يُشغّل | mix ingredients | يخلط المقادير |
| for 30 minutes | لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة | look pretty | يبدو جميلًا |
| find out | يكتشف - يعرف | such as | مثل |
| take out | يخرج | pour into | يصب في |
| share with | يتشارك مع | boil.....for | يغلي...لمدة |





## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

### INGREDIENTS

المقادير

| | |
|---|---|
| 2 | cups semolina |
| 1 | cup yogurt |
| $\frac{1}{3}$ | cup sugar |
| $\frac{1}{2}$ | cup melted butter |
| 1 | tsp baking powder |
| 1 | cup coconut |
| | almonds |
| | Syrup |
| $\frac{3}{4}$ | cup water |
| 2 | tbsp honey |





## My favorite recipe

وصفتي المفضلة

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames and molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

نحن نطهو كثير من الأشياء المختلفة مثل شوربة العدس والفول المدمس والملوخية.
الشيء المفضل لدي هو أن أخبز البسبوسة. وهذه هي طريقة عملها.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this! Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

أولاً تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه. ثم زن المقادير ثم اخلط السميد وجوز الهند والسكر والزبدة المذابة. ينبغي عليك أن
تخلط هذه المكونات باليد. أنا أحب عمل هذا. ثم تضيف الزبادي وتصب الخليط في طبق الخبيز.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

يمكنك استخدام سكينة لعمل أشكال ماسية فوق البسبوسة. ضع حبة لوز على كل شكل معين (ماسة). إنها تبدو جميلة حقًا.
اخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!

قم بعمل الشربات. ضع العسل والماء وعصير الليمون في القدر. اغلي الخليط لمدة عشر دقائق.
... على البسبوسة. ثم بتقطيع البسبوسة وتشاركها مع عائلتك!

## Project

# A Poster About Mango

ملصق عن المانجو

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with

تزرع المانجو في مصر. يمكننا صنع الكثير من المشروبات والأطباق بها.

We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

يمكننا عمل عصير مانجو لذيذ أو عصير كوكتيل كما يمكننا أيضا عمل سلطة فواكه وكعكة المانجو.




Research a fruit or vegetable that grows in E... and how it grows. Find out wh...

1. What ...

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We cook lots of things such as lentil ..................................
   a) soup  b) soap  c) wood  d) mango
2. Turn .................................................. the oven to get it hot.
   a) off  b) down  c) out  d) on
3. .................................................. the mixture into a baking dish.
   a) Poor  b) Weight  c) Pour  d) Hit
4. Mangoes .................................................. in Egypt.
   a) sleep  b) grow  c) fly  d) make

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

syrup - semolina - basbousa - oven - pour

My favorite recipe to cook is basbousa. It is very easy to make. First, turn your ..........(1).......... on to get it hot. Then you mix the ..........(2).........., coconut, sugar, and melted butter. Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake the basbousa in the oven. To make the ......(3)......, put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan and boil the mixture. Then ..........(4).......... the syrup over the basbousa.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. basbousa - My - is - to - thing - bake - favorite - .

..................................................................................................

2. the basbousa - the oven - for - Bake - in - minutes - 30 - .

..................................................................................................

3. dishes - can - What - you - make - mangoes - with - ?

..................................................................................................

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We cook lots of different things. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this! Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Bake the basbousa in the oven.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. My favorite thing to bake is ..........................................
   a) potatoes b) cake c) basbousa d) bread
2. You need to turn your .......................................... on to get it hot.
   a) oven b) knife c) spoon d) pot

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What is the general idea of the text?
..........................................
4. What can you use to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa? ..........................................

## 5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.
اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة

**Mangoes**

Guiding words:
( favorite - grow - drinks - juice - salad - delicious )

..........................................
..........................................
..........................................

## 6 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ you can use a knife to make diamond shapes
..........................................

# Review on Unit (1)



cake

candy
chocolate



oconuts

eggs

grapes


lemons


limes

mangoes

onions

pineapple


carrots


rice


castle
giant

**A / An**

نستخدم (a / an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد.

- a carrot
- an orange

**some & any**

نستخدم (any / some) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة.

- some milk
- any water

نستخدم (some) في الإثبات وحالة العرض والطلب.

- I have some apples.
- Can I have some oranges?
- Would you like some ice cream?

نستخدم (any) في حالة النفي والاستفهام.

- I don't have any sugar.
- Do you have any rice?

Language

We plant our food

Phonics

/ eɪ /

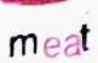


cake

grapes

/ iː /


bean



meat

/ æ /


candy

/ aɪ /




rice


lime

/ eɪ /


play
say

/ ɪ /


milk

fish


Decimal fractions

$$\frac{1}{5} = 1 \div 5 = 0.20$$

$$\frac{1}{4} = 1 \div 4 = 0.25$$

$$\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$$




**Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

## *My favorite food*

My favorite food is fish. It's a delicious meal. Fish is healthy. I always eat it with rice and salad. My mother always cooks it to me. She buys it at the market. I like fish a lot.

## *Healthy and unhealthy food*

It's important to eat healthy food. Fruit and vegetables are healthy. I always eat healthy food. It makes my body healthy. I don't like unhealthy food. It makes my body unhealthy and weak. We should make sure we eat a balanced diet so our bodies get the nutrients they need.

## *Mangoes*

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

## *My favorite recipe*

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. We mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. Then we add the yogurt. We put almonds on top of it. We bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

# Dictation on Unit (1)

## Lesson (1)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | فول |
| | جزر |
| | شوكولاتة |
| | بيض |
| | جوز الهند |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | ليمون |
| | عنب |
| | بصل |
| | أناناس |
| | مفضل |

## Lesson (2)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | عنب |
| | عسل |
| | قائمة تسوق |
| | مهلبية (نوع من الطعام حلو المذاق) |
| | شاورما |
| | بيض مسلوق |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | بيتزا |
| | فول مدمس |
| | زبادي |
| | بطاطس مقلية |
| | ساندوتش برجر |
| | كشري |

## Lesson (3)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | ساق الفاصوليا |
| | يقطع |
| | يجذب / ينتزع |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | عملاق |
| | قلعة |
| | قفص |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | يغلي |
| | يضيف |
| | يخلط |
| | يزن |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| | يصب |
| | يخبز |
| | مكونات |
| | وصفة أكل |



Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# Activities on Unit (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite food is .................................................................................... .
   a) mango b) fish c) meat d) rice
2. Mango is a .................................................................................... food.
   a) unhealthy b) healthy c) bad d) normal
3. We have a mango tree in the .................................................................. .
   a) zoo b) classroom c) garden d) library
4. My father sometimes sells mangoes at the ........................................ .
   a) zoo b) school c) library d) market

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle ........................................ eggs and sells them at the market.
   a) eats b) collects c) breaks d) runs
2. A farmer ........................................................................ vegetables and fruits.
   a) grows b) throws c) writes d) reads
3. We buy and sell fruits and vegetables at the ........................................ .
   a) zoo b) home c) club d) market
4. A ................................................ is a box in which we keep animals.
   a) kitchen b) cage c) castle d) giant

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

garden - market - koshari - easy - lentils

We cook lots of things. My favorite thing is ..............(1).............. I buy the ingredients at the ..............(2).............. . I use ..............(3).............. and rice to make it. It is a very delicious dish. It is not ....(4).............. to cook it. My mom helps me make it.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six o'clock. I have breakfast with my family. I have ful medames, bread, boiled eggs and fresh juice. In the afternoon my mom and I go to the market. We buy fruit and vegetables. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Ali has ........................ for breakfast
   a) burger b) french fries c) ful medames d) cheese
2. Ali is in grade ........................
   a) five b) six c) seven d) four

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Ali go in the afternoon? ........................
4. What do Ali and his mom buy at the market? ........................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. cook - We - of - things - different - lots - .
........................
2. like - to - What - you - would - drink - ?
........................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Do you have ........................ (some) carrots?
2. Would you like ........................ (any) bananas?

## 7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

- mangoes grow in egypt.

........................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: **My favorite food**

( favorite - fish - healthy - delicious )



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

grapes - Would - How about - some

Seller : Hello. 1) .................................... you like some bananas?
Mona : No, thank you. I would like some 2) ....................................
Seller : 3) .................................... buying some carrots?
Mona : Yes, please!
Seller : How about buying some oranges?
Mona : No, thank you. I would like 4) .................................... apples.

### Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

please - carrots - any - about

Mona : I would like some 1) .................................... , please.
Esraa : Are there 2) .................................... , tomatoes?
Mona : Yes, look! There are.
Esraa : How 3) .................................... buying some lemons?
Mona : Yes, 4) .................................... .

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I would like .................................... eggs, please.
   a) some b) a c) an d) any
2. Are there .................................... carrots?
   a) a b) some c) any d) an
3. We buy food at the .................................... .
   a) market b) school c) office d) zoo
4. I would like .................................... orange, please.
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
5. A .................................... is a very large building built a long time age.
   a) cage b) box c) room d) castle



Unit (2)
I want to be healthy!
!أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة
In this unit the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف....
• listen, read, research, and write about sports.
يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الألعاب الرياضية.
• talk about sports he/she is good or bad at.
يتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية التي يُجيدها والتي لا يُجيدها.
• read and listen to a science fiction story.
يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة خيال علمي.
• learn how to say single-syllable words.
يتعلم كيف ينطق الكلمات ذات المقطع الواحد.
• write a biography about a famous Egyptian sports person.
يكتب سيرة ذاتية عن شخص رياضي مصري مشهور.
• give a presentation about how to help his/her local environment.
يقدم عرض عن كيفية مساعدة بيئته المحلية.




# SPORTS



**Listen and say.** استمع وقل.



karate
الكاراتيه



squash
الاسكواش



sailing
الإبحار



kung fu
كونغ فو



Sports
الألعاب الرياضية



tennis
التنس



football
كرة القدم



swimming
السباحة





handball
كرة اليد

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| popular | شعبي / مشهور | bad | سيء | agree | |
| club | نادي | worse | أسوأ | match | |
| later | فيما بعد / لاحقًا | good | جيد | like | |
| awesome | رائع | better | أفضل | favorite | |
| bubble | فقاعة | great | عظيم | game | |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| watch | يشاهد | watched | love | يحب | loved |
| agree | يوافق | agreed | look | يبدو | looked |
| want | يريد | wanted | try | يجرب | tried |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| win | يفوز | won | know | يعرف | knew |
| go | يذهب | went | see | يرى | saw |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| It's great! | إنه لشيء رائع! | So do I. | وأنا كذلك (أيضًا). |
| bad at + (v+ing) / (noun) | سيء في | look fun | يبدو ممتعًا |
| good at + (v+ing) / (noun) | جيد في | Me too! | وأنا أيضًا! |

### Did you know ?

This is bubble football. There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!

هذه كرة القدم الفقاعية. هناك الكثير من الرياضات غير العادية التي يمكنك تجربتها. إنها ممتعة، وتمكنك من الحفاظ على صحتك!





Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.


Lesson 1

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Seleem | What are you watching? | ماذا تشاهد؟ |
| Wael | An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini – it's great. I love squash! | مباراة قديمة بين رنيم الوليلي ونور الشربيني- إنه شئ رائع - أنا أحب الاسكواش. |
| Seleem | Me too! Who's winning? | وأنا أيضًا! من الفائز؟ |
| Wael | Raneem – she's very good at playing squash. | رنيم- إنها ماهرة جدًا في لعب الاسكواش. |
| Seleem | I know. What sport are you good at? | أنا أعرف. ما الرياضة التي تجيدها أنت؟ |
| Wael | I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you? | أنا جيد جدًا في لعب التنس، ولكنني سيئ في لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك؟ |
| Seleem | I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too. | أنا جيد في لعب الاسكواش، ولكنني سيئ في لعب التنس. أحب كرة القدم أيضًا. |
| Wael | So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football. | وأنا كذلك. ولكنني أفضل في التنس أكثر من كرة القدم. هيا نذهب ونلعب مباراة كرة قدم. |
| Seleem | Yes, let's go to the club later. | نعم، لنذهب إلى النادي لاحقًا. |
| Wael | Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV? | نعم! وما هي الرياضات الأخرى التي تشاهدها في التليفزيون؟ |
| Seleem | I love watching karate and kung fu. And you? | أحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونغ فو. وأنت؟ |
| Wael | My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun! | المفضلة لدي هي السباحة والإبحار. الإبحار يبدو ممتعًا. |
| Seleem | Great! So what time do you want to play football? | رائع! في أي وقت تريد لعب كرة القدم؟ |
| Wael | About five? | حوالي الساعة الخامسة؟ |
| Seleem | Awesome – see you in the club later! | رائع- أراك في النادي لاحقًا! |

Help your child listen and read the dialog.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Anas and Seif are talking about .................................................
   a) animals  b) birds  c) sports  d) subjects
2. Anas loves .................................................
   a) squash  b) tennis  c) handball  d) basketball
3. Seif is good at playing .................................................
   a) football  b) handball  c) basketball  d) tennis
4. Seif is bad at playing .................................................
   a) football  b) handball  c) basketball  d) tennis

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ali is good ................................................. squash.
   a) in  b) on  c) at  d) of
2. We love ........................ like football, basketball and tennis.
   a) sports  b) animals  c) food  d) drinks
3. Football is the most ................................. sport in Egypt.
   a) poor  b) popular  c) bad  d) worst
4. I like water sports. I'm good at .................................................
   a) football  b) tennis  c) handball  d) swimming



Help your child deal with such questions

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

drinks - squash - famous - bad - sports

Seleem and Wael are friends. They both like ..........(1).......... . Wael is very good at playing tennis, but he is ..........(2).......... at playing handball. Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis. Seleem is watching an old ..........(3).......... match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini. Raneem is an Egyptian player and she is one of the most ..........(4).......... squash players in the world.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. playing - I'm - bad - at - tennis - .

.............................................................................................

2. watching - karate - I - love - kung fu - and - .

.............................................................................................

3. time - football - want to - What - do - play - you - ?

.............................................................................................

4. good - at - sport - you - What - are - ?

.............................................................................................

## 5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Your favorite sport

(football - club - friends - Friday)

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ she's very good at swimming

.............................................................................................

# Lesson (1 / B) AN AWFUL NIGHTMARE!



## Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| shade | ظل | emissions | انبعاثات | greenhouses | صوبات زراعية |
| nightmare | كابوس | toxic | سام | breathing | التنفس |



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| grass | حشائش | plastic | بلاستيك | dirty | قذر / غير نظيف |
| air | الهواء | dream | حلم | horrible | فظيع |
| awful | فظيع / مُرَوّع | planet | كوكب | pollution | تلوث |
| problems | مشكلات | factory | مصنع | hospital | مستشفى |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة | | | *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Present** | | **Past** | **Present** | | **Past** |
| breathe | يتنفس | breathed | fall | يسقط / يقع | fell |
| remember | يتذكر | remembered | get | يصبح | got |
| wait | ينتظر | waited | wake up | يستيقظ | woke up |
| plant | يزرع | planted | drive | يقود | drove |

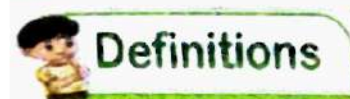


## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| have to | يجب أن | because of | بسبب | too many | كثير جداً (للعدد) |
| It's time to | حان الوقت لـ | on holiday | في إجازة | too much | كثير جداً (للكمية) |
| work hard | يعمل بجد | get ready for | يستعد لـ | stay at home | يمكث بالبيت |
| cut down | يقطع | dangerous for | خطر على | look after | يعتني بـ |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Definitions التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| toxic | very bad to eat or breathe | سام |
| emissions | gases from cars or factories | انبعاثات |
| shade | an area which the light of the sun can't reach | ظل |
| nightmare | a bad dream | كابوس |
| greenhouse | a glass building used for growing plants | صوبة زراعية |
| breathe | to move air into and out of your lungs | يتنفس |

## Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing.

لا أستطيع التنفس، أعرف ذلك. فالهواء أسود وسام. يوجد الكثير من الانبعاثات الناتجة عن السيارات. إنها خطر على رئة الأطفال ونضطر للبقاء في المنزل. هناك العديد من الأيام التي لا يمكننا فيها الذهاب إلى المدرسة لأن الهواء سيء للغاية. اضطر أخي الصغير للذهاب إلى المستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.

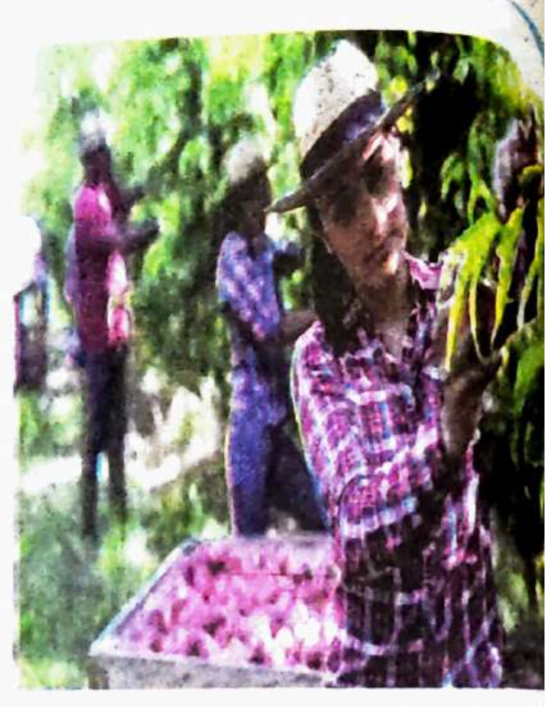


I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends – the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty.

أتذكر عندما كان بإمكاننا الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائنا - كان العُشب أخضرا والسماء زرقاء. كان بإمكاننا حتى رؤية الشمس. الآن لا يمكننا رؤية الشمس لأن السماء رمادية أو سوداء. أتذكر الذهاب في الأجازة واللعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. سبحنا في البحر، لكننا الآن لا نستطيع السباحة في البحر بسبب وجود الكثير من البلاستيك فيه وهو متسخ.

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses and we can't sit outside any more. But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun.



أشياء أخرى أتذكرها هي اكل الفاكهة من الأشجار والجلوس في ظلالها في الأيام الحارة. لكنهم الآن يقطعون كل الأشجار. لذلك ليس لدينا سوى الفاكهة من الصوبات الزراعية ولا نستطيع الجلوس في الخارج بعد الآن. لكن مهلًا، ما هذا؟ إنها أمي تنادي وحان وقت الاستعداد للمدرسة! كان كل ذلك كابوسًا مروعًا! انظر للخارج والسماء زرقاء واستطيع رؤية الشمس.

We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!



سنذهب إلى الحديقة اليوم. لكن أتذكر حُلمي وأعرف بكل تأكيد أننا نحتاج إلى الاعتناء بكوكبنا. يمكننا أن نقود سياراتنا بشكل أقل ونستخدم دراجاتنا أكثر ونزرع أشجارًا، ونحافظ على نظافة بحرنا، لكن يجب أن نعمل جاهدين على ذلك!

## According to the writer's nightmare, answer the following questions:

1. Why can't the writer breathe?

   ......................................................................

2. What happened to the writer's brother?

   ......................................................................



Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

good - breathing - toxic - dangerous - emissions

I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and ..........(1).............. . There are too many ..........(2).............. from cars. It's ..........(3).............. for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. My brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his.....(4)............ .

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I had a bad dream; it was a .................................................. .
   a) greenhouse b) nightmare c) shade d) planet

2. Gases from cars or factories are called .................................................. .
   a) nightmares b) greenhouses c) shares d) emissions

3. We should .................................................. our planet.
   a) look after b) breathe c) make d) swim

4. My little brother went to the .................... because of problems with his breathing.
   a) school b) cinema c) hospital d) post office

5. We can't go to school because the air is .................................................. .
   a) healthy b) fresh c) toxic d) clean

6. It's too hot so I'm sitting in the .................................................. .
   a) shade b) rain c) desert d) sun

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Pollution is very dangerous to our world. Pollution comes from emissions from cars. Emissions make the air black and toxic. It's bad for children's lungs. Children go to hospitals because of problems with breathing. Pollution comes from plastic in the sea. We can't swim any more. We cut down the tress and so we don't have fruits or shade to sit in. To stop pollution, we need to look after our planet. We need to drive fewer cars, plant more trees, and use more bikes.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The general idea of the text is about ..........
   a) water b) food c) pollution d) sports
2. The underlined word "dangerous" is the opposite of ..........
   a) safe b) far c) tall d) fast

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does pollution com from? ..........
4. How can we stop pollution? ..........

..........

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. from - are - There - many - emissions - cars - too - .

..........

2. go - park - the - play - to - I - to - .

..........

3. need - after - to - We - our planet - look - .

..........

## 5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: **Air pollution**

(emissions - hospitals - breathing )

# Lesson (2) I'M GOOD AT ...



## Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| poem | قصيدة | team | فريق |
| French | اللغة الفرنسية | table tennis | تنس الطاولة |
| drawing | الرسم | chess | شطرنج |
| across the desert | عبر الصحراء | on your own | بمفردك / بنفسك |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

***Regular verbs*** أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| climb | يتسلق | climbed |
| jump | يقفز | jumped |
| tidy | ينظم / يرتب | tidied |
| practice | يتدرب | practiced |

***Irregular verbs*** أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| speak | يتحدث | spoke |
| write | يكتب | wrote |
| make | يصنع | made |
| draw | يرسم | drew |

## - Study the following.

| do | | play | |
|---|---|---|---|
| do karate | يلعب كاراتيه | play football | يلعب كرة القدم |
| do kung fu | يلعب كونغ فو | play chess | يلعب الشطرنج |
| do taekwondo | يلعب تايكوندو | play tennis | يلعب التنس |
| do jigsaws | يلعب الصور المتقطعة | play handball | يلعب كرة اليد |
| do math | يحل مسائل رياضية | play basketball | يلعب كرة السلة |

| go | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| go swimming | يسبح | go sailing | يبحر |





# Language Focus

## Good at جيد في

**- To talk about things we do or don't do well, we use:**

عندما نتحدث عن الأشياء التي نقوم بها بشكل جيد أو لا نقوم بها بشكل جيد نستخدم :

good at جيد في
great at رائع في + → v + ing
bad at سيئ في → noun

- I'm very good at swimming.
- I'm great at football.
- I'm bad at sailing.

## Spelling rules

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

١-عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف (-e) غير المنطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (-e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (-e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

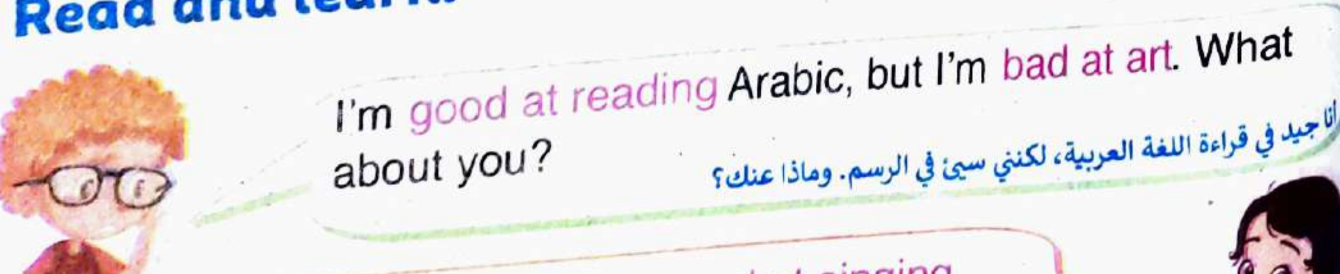
make → making   take → taking   be → being

٢-عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

swim → swimming   sit → sitting   stop → stopping

## Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.






I'm bad at playing the piano, but I'm good at singing.

أنا سيئ في العزف على البيانو، لكنني جيد في الغناء.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mariam is good at .................................... football.
   a) play  b) plays  c) playing  d) played
2. Ali is very good at .................................... poems.
   a) write  b) writing  c) wrote  d) writes
3. Amr is bad at .................................... French.
   a) speak  b) spoke  c) speaking  d) speaks
4. My children are great at .................... their mom in the kitchen.
   a) helped  b) help  c) helps  d) helping
5. I'm good at .................................... Arabic.
   a) reading  b) read  c) reads  d) is reading
6. Monkeys are good .................................... climbing trees.
   a) in  b) on  c) for  d) at
7. My sister is bad .................................... playing the piano.
   a) at  b) to  c) on  d) in
8. The camel is good at .................................... across the desert.
   a) walked  b) walk  c) walks  d) walking
9. Reem is bad at .................................... .
   a) draw  b) drawing  c) draws  d) is drawing
10. Aser is good at .................................... tennis.
    a) play  b) plays  c) played  d) playing

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I'm good at .................................... (play) handball.
2. My sister is very good at .................................... (write) stories.
3. Omar is bad at .................................... (speak) Chinese.
4. They're great at .................................... (help) their dad on the farm.
5. I'm good at .................................... (make) dinner.
6. Dalia is bad .................................... (on) playing handball.
7. Salma is great at .................................... (does) math.



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Language Functions

للتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية.

## To talk about favorite sports.

A : Which are your favorite sports to do on your own?
أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تؤديها بنفسك؟

B : I like playing squash on my own.
أحب لعب الاسكواش بمفردي.

A : Which are your favorite sports to do with others or in a team?
ما هي الرياضات التي تفضل ممارستها مع الآخرين أو ضمن فريق؟

B : I like playing football in a team.
أحب لعب كرة القدم في فريق.



A : Which are your favorite sports to watch on TV?
ما هي الرياضة التي تفضل مشاهدتها على شاشة التلفزيون؟

B : Swimming is my favorite sport to watch on TV.
السباحة هي رياضتي المفضلة التي أشاهدها على شاشة التلفزيون.

## Note

We use (Why) to ask about reason, and we use (because) to answer and give reasons.

نستخدم (لماذا) لنسأل عن السبب، ونستخدم (لأن) للإجابة وإعطاء الأسباب.

e.g. A: Why are you good at table tennis?
B: I'm good at table tennis because I move fast.





Help your child talk about his favorite sports.
ساعد طفلك أن يتحدث عن رياضاته المفضلة.

# Adding and subtracting decimals

## جمع وطرح الكسور العشرية

**Follow the following steps to add (or subtract) decimal numbers:**

أتبع الخطوات التالية لتقوم بجمع أو (طرح) الأرقام العشرية:

١- تعامل مع الأرقام العشرية مثل الأعداد الصحيحة.

٢- ضع الأرقام متتالية بحيث تكون العلامة العشرية لكل منها في نفس المكان.

٣- اجمع أو اطرح بداية من اليمين إلى اليسار.

2,367 + 8,145 =

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ +8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array}$$

10,512 - 8,145 =

$$\begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ -8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

**1 Circle the correct answer.**

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. 7.983 + 5.432 = (13.415 / 134.15)
2. 9.076 + 8.894 = (1.7970 / 17.970)
3. 60.678 – 50.356 = (103.22 / 10.322)
4. 129.675 – 6.231 = (123.444 / 12.3444)





Help your child add and subtract decimals.

ساعد طفلك أن يجمع ويطرح الأعداد العشرية.

## 2 Solve the following problems.

حل المسائل الكلامية التالية.

1. If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees?

لاحظ استخدام كلمة "difference" في المسائل الكلامية التي تعني الفرق بين الأرقام أي أننا نقوم بعملية الطرح.

$$\begin{array}{r} 3.459 \\ -\ 2.753 \\ \hline 0.706 \end{array}$$

2. Jihan ran 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran?

لاحظ استخدام كلمة "total" في المسائل الكلامية التي تعني أننا نقوم بعملية الجمع.

$$\begin{array}{r} 3.567 \\ +\ 5.258 \\ \hline 8.825 \end{array}$$

3. Taher bought 2 watermelons. One weighs 2.657 kg and the other weighs 3.205 kg. Find :

a) the total weight of both watermelons.

..................................................................................................

b) the weight difference between the two watermelons.

..................................................................................................

4. Farida swam 100 meters in 2.763 minutes. Zeinab swam 100 meters in 2.341 minutes. Who was faster, Farida or Zeinab? How much faster was she?

..................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Dalia is good at playing ....................................................
   a) football b) volleyball c) basketball d) tennis
2. Dalia is bad at playing ....................................................
   a) football b) handball c) basketball d) tennis
3. Aser is Dalia's ....................................................
   a) teacher b) father c) uncle d) brother
4. Aser is good at playing ....................................................
   a) handball b) basketball c) tennis d) football

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm eleven years old. I'm in primary five. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis and he is bad at helping me in the kitchen!
My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The underlined word "good" is opposite of ....................................................
   a) bad b) great c) well d) nice
2. Aser is good at playing ....................................................
   a) handball b) tennis c) basketball d) karate

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What is Aser bad at? ....................................................
4. Mention two things that Dalia is good at. ....................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. ........................................ are good at walking across the desert.
   a) Monkeys b) Cats c) Camels d) Donkeys
2. Ali is good at ........................................ tennis.
   a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
3. Monkeys are good ........................................ climbing trees.
   a) in b) to c) on d) at
4. I'm very good at ........................................
   a) is drawing b) draw c) drawing d) draws
5. I'm bad at ........................................ cakes.
   a) made b) make c) makes d) making

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. you - are - What - at - good - ?

........................................................................................................

2. at - are - Monkeys - good - trees - climbing - .

........................................................................................................

3. is - bad - Sami - at - French - speaking - .

........................................................................................................



## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ i'm good at reading Arabic

........................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



# SPORTS PLACES AND EQUIPMENT

## Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



football pitch

ملعب كرة قدم



swimming pool

حمام سباحة



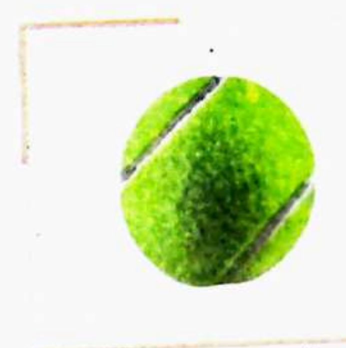
tennis court

ملعب تنس



squash rackets

مضارب اسكواش



tennis ball

كرة تنس



karate suit

بدلة كاراتيه



football boots

حذاء كرة القدم



swimming goggles

نظارة سباحة

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| different | مختلف | wall | حائط - سور |
| racket | مضرب | kick | يركل - يشوط |
| best | أفضل | way | طريقة |
| summer | فصل الصيف | fast | سريع |
| moves | حركات | awesome | رائع |
| really | حقًا | place | مكان |
| high kicks | ركلات عالية | rhyme | يتناغم |
| equipment | معدات | | |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| kick | يشوط - يركل | kicked |
| move | يتحرك | moved |
| practice | يمارس | practiced |
| use | يستخدم | used |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| do/does | يفعل | did |
| can | يستطيع | could |
| think | يعتقد | thought |
| wear | يرتدي / يلبس | wore |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| different moves | حركات مختلفة | do karate | يلعب كاراتيه |
| do high kicks | يقوم بعمل ركلات عالية | have to | يجب أن |
| with walls all around | تحيط بها الجدران من كل مكان | go swimming | يسبح - يذهب للسباحة |



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.




# Listen, point and say.

استمع، أشر وقل:



**Football pitch:** This is where I play football.

ملعب كرة القدم: هذا هو المكان الذي ألعب فيه كرة القدم.

**Swimming pool:** This is where I go swimming.

حمام السباحة: هذا هو المكان حيث أذهب للسباحة.



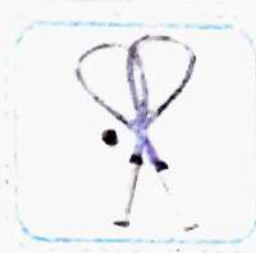


**Tennis court:** This is where I play tennis.

ملعب تنس: هذا هو المكان الذي ألعب فيه التنس.

**Squash rackets:** This is what I use to play squash.

مضارب الاسكواش: هذا ما أستخدمه لألعب الاسكواش.





**Karate suit:** This is what I wear to do karate.

بدلة كاراتيه: هذا هو ما أرتديه لممارسة الكاراتيه.

**Kung fu:** This is when I do high kicks. It rhymes with "you" and "two"

كونغ فو: هذا عندما أفعل الركلات العالية. إنها تتناغم مع نطق "you" و "two".





**Swimming goggles:** This is what I wear to go swimming.

نظارة سباحة: هذا هو ما ارتديه لممارسة السباحة.

**Football boots:** This is what I wear to play football.

حذاء كرة القدم: هذا ما أرتديه لألعب كرة القدم.



Help your child read about sports places and equipment.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الأماكن والمعدات الرياضية.

## Listen, read and role-play.



I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

أنا أحب رياضتي - إن ركل الكرة في الملعب هو الشيء المفضل لدي.



Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

أفضل شيء بالنسبة لي هو التواجد في المسبح وممارسة هذه الرياضة. أشعر بأنني شخص مختلف.



I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

أحب الطريقة التي يمكنني بها القيام بالعديد من الحركات المختلفة. أكثر ما أحب هو الركلات العالية. بدلتي لهذه الرياضة بيضاء.



I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

أحب هذه الرياضة لأنني أجيدها. أنت تلعب في ملعب صغير تحيط به الجدران من كل مكان. لديك مضرب صغير وتتحرك بسرعة كبيرة. وتشعر بالحر جدًا أيضًا.



I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأنا أمارسها كثيرًا في الصيف. لديهم ملاعب تنس في الحديقة وأنا أذهب هناك مع أصدقائي.



Help your child listen and read about favorite sports.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ عن الرياضات المفضلة.




# PRONUNCIATION



## How to count sounds in a word.

كيفية عد الأصوات في الكلمة.

- **Break the words into individual sounds to count them.**

قسم الكلمة إلى أصوات حتى تتمكن من عدها.

m a n → man

Some sounds have two letters.

هناك بعض الأصوات تحتوي على حرفين.

When two letter sounds are put together, they can make a new sound.

قد يتحد حرفين معًا فينتج عنهما صوت آخر مختلف.

| Letters | Sound | Example |
|---|---|---|
| ch | /tʃ/ | chair |
| sh | /ʃ/ | dish |
| th | /θ/ | thirsty |
| th | /ð/ | father |
| ph | /f/ | phone |
| wh | /w/ | where |
| ng | /ŋ/ | spring |
| ck | /k/ | kick |
| ll | /l/ | tall |

### How many sounds are there in....?

k i c k → kick → It has four letters, but it has 3 sounds.

t a l l → tall → It has four letters, but it has 3 sounds.

d i s h → dish → It has four letters, but it has 3 sounds.

Help your child identify these sounds. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات.



## Short and long vowels.

الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والممدودة.

There are five vowels in English: **(a, e, i, o, u)**

| Short a /æ/ | Long a /eɪ/ |
|---|---|
| bat | cake |
| cat | pain |
| **Short i /ɪ/** | **Long i /aɪ/** |
| dig | bike |
| fish | night |
| **Short e /e/** | **Long e /i:/** |
| pen | bee |
| egg | feet |
| **Short o /ɒ/** | **Long o /əʊ/** |
| dog | rose |
| pot | cone |
| **Short u /ʌ/** | **Long u /u:/** |
| nut | cube |
| cup | fuel |

### Listen and tick (✓) the words with long vowel sounds.

استمع وضع (✓) أمام الكلمة ذات الصوت المتحرك الطويل.

1. cry ( )
2. swim ( )
3. bat (
4. so ( )
5. fuel ( )
6. make (
7. cone ( )
8. cube ( )
9. feet (



Help your child identify these sounds.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات.



## Syllables:

المقاطع:

**A syllable:** is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظي: هو جزء من كلمة تحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد منفرد.

### One-syllable words (A single syllable words):

A single syllable word contains one vowel between two ore more consonants.

المقطع اللفظي الواحد: يتكون من صوت واحد متحرك بين صوتين ساكنين أو أكثر.

***Words with one syllable*** كلمات ذات مقطع واحد

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| doll | دمية | red | لون أحمر |
| pen | قلم جاف | sock | جورب (شراب) |
| full | ممتلئ | fish | سمكة |
| man | رجل | sun | شمس |
| cat | قطة | neck | رقبة |

***Words with two syllables*** كلمات ذات مقطعين

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| spi-der | عنكبوت | mu-sic | موسيقى |
| tea-cher | مدرس | ti-ger | نمر |
| ro-bot | إنسان آلي | E-gypt | مصر |
| hu-man | إنسان | ba-by | طفل رضيع |
| pa-per | ورق | win-dow | شباك - نافذة |
| po-llute | يلوث | fi-nal | نهائي |

**- Listen and count the syllables.** استمع وعد المقاطع.

1. hotel: ........................ syllables.
2. spider: ........................ syllables.
3. red: ........................ syllable.
4. Egypt: ........................ syllables.
5. window: ........................ syllables.
6. sock: ........................ syllable.
7. racket: ........................ syllables.
8. egg: ........................ syllable.

# Activities

...الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

...تمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ola loves .................................... the ball on the pitc...
   a) kicking b) moving c) sending d) throwing
2. Ola wears her football ....................................
   a) suits b) boots c) dress d) skirt
3. Hana plays ....................................
   a) football b) handball c) tennis d) basketba...
4. Hana uses the .................................... and runs fast on the cou...
   a) boots b) rackets c) boots d) suit

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

...الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When it rained, the football .................................... was w...
   a) court b) pitch c) pool d) class
2. In karate players wear ....................................
   a) suits b) goggles c) dress d) shorts
3. We can't practice tennis at school because we don't have a tennis ......
   a) pool b) water c) court d) pitch
4. People swim in a swimming ....................................
   a) river b) sea c) lake d) pool
5. My feet are too large for these football ....................................
   a) boots b) suits c) goggles d) hats
6. In tennis, players use .................................... balls
   a) karate b) goggles c) suits d) tennis



Help your child deal with such questions.

...ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7. I wanted to play squash with Shaimaa, but I forgot my ........ at home.
   a) racket  b) suits  c) goggles  d) boots

8. I put on my swimming .............................. and jumped in the pool.
   a) suits  b) trainers  c) boots  d) goggles

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pool - goggles - football - boots - pitch

I like swimming. I wear swimming ..........(1).............. to protect my eyes. I always go to the swimming ..........(2).............. on Saturdays. My brother is good at playing ............(3)............... . He wears his football ..........(4)........... to play with his team. He plays on the football pitch.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. swimming - I - pool - go - a swimming - in - .

..............................................................................................

2. use - play - I - rackets - to - squash - .

..............................................................................................

3. We - tennis - play - a court - on - .

..............................................................................................

## 5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Sports equipment

Guiding words:

( pitch - boots - pool )

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................



# Lessons (4 & 5) -WRITING - A SPORTS BIOGRAPHY - PROJECT



## Key Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| water pollution | تلوث الماء | garbage | قمامة | Egyptian | صري |
| agricultural | زراعي | important | هام - مهم | champion | ل |
| water bodies | مسطحات مائية | biography | سيرة ذاتية | famous | شهور |
| medal | ميدالية | wildlife | الحياة البرية | competitor | نافس |



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| taekwondo player | لاعب تايكوندو | training | ريب |
| athlete | لاعب رياضي | career | لحياة المهنية |
| special needs | احتياجات خاصة | organisms | كائنات الحية |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| compete | يتنافس | competed |
| avoid | يتجنب | avoided |
| destroy | يدمر | destroyed |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| speak | يتحدث | spoke |
| begin | يبدأ | began |
| lose | يخسر | lost |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| famous for | مشهور بـ | throw garbage | يلقي القمامة |
| at the age of | في (عمر/سن) | bronze medal | ميدالية برونزية |
| compete against | يتنافس ضد | gold medal | ميدالية ذهبية |
| win a medal | يفوز بميدالية | make children ill | يسبب مرض للأطفال |
| kill organisms | يقتل الكائنات الحية | | |



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing.

هداية ملاك لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة. فهي واحدة من الشخصين الذين حملا العلم المصري في دورة الألعاب الأولمبية في طوكيو في عام ٢٠٢١ وهذا مذهل.

Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14.
She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

ولدت هداية في الحادي و العشرين من أبريل عام ١٩٩٣. بدأت في ممارسة رياضة التايكوندو في سن السابعة وفازت بالعديد من الجوائز في سن الرابعة عشر. فازت بالميدالية البرونزية في أولمبياد ريو في عام ٢٠١٦. كما فازت أيضًا بالميدالية البرونزية في طوكيو في عام ٢٠٢١.

Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

هداية شخص طيب جدا. في عام ٢٠١٦. ساعدت لاعبة رياضية مغربية وهي (راجا جارماش) من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة, لم يكن لدى راجا أحد تنافسه. لذلك أصبحت هداية منافستها وخسرت. لذلك استطاعت راجا أن تفوز بالميدالية الذهبية وكانت لحظة خاصة (مميزة) للغاية بالنسبة لها.

What does Hedaya do now? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

ماذا تفعل هداية الآن؟ إنها تتدرب بجد. فهي تريد حقًا أن تفوز بميدالية ذهبية!

Help your child listen and read about a famous Egyptian athlete.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ عن احد اللاعبين الرياضيين المصريين المشهورين.



# Writing skills

## How to write a sports biography. ية كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن بطل رياضي.

1. Introduce the person, giving his / her name. الشخص معطيًا اسمه.

(Name of a person) is a famous ..... اسم الرياضة ..... player.
He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد
He / She began practicing ..... اسم الرياضة ..... at the age of ..........

2. Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.
لماذا هم مشهورون واعط تفاصيل عن رياضتهم.

He / She was the first .......... to + inf.
He / She was / is successful because ..........
He / She won ..........

3. Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.
اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام وذو أهمية.

He is also ..........
He / She won ..........
Moreover / As well as this, .......... / He is ..........

4. Say what you think could happen next for their career.
قل في رأيك ماذا يمكن أن يحدث بعد ذلك في حياتهم المهنية.

I think he / she will become the most ..........


Help your child write a biography about a famous athlete.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب سيرة ذاتية عن لاعب رياضي مشهور.

## Model

Sherif Osman was a famous Paralympic Egyptian powerlifting player. He began powerlifting at the age of 18. He was born in Minia on 15th September. He won many important awards. He won the African Championship for a second time in Algeria. He was a successful player because he was disabled. He won the World Championship title in the men's up to 59 kg in Mexico City. Moreover he won Egypt's First Gold Medal at Rio Paralympic.

# Project

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

## Water pollution تلوث الماء



When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution.
Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

عندما تدخل المواد الكيميائية الضارة إلى المسطحات المائية مثل الأنهار والبحيرات والبحار، فإننا نسمي هذا تلوث المياه.
يمكن أن يقتل تلوث المياه الكائنات الحية التي تعيش في الماء مثل الأسماك والطيور وسرطان البحر. ويمكنه أيضا أن يقتل الطيور التي تأكل الأسماك. يمكن أن يتسبب تلوث المياه في فقدان الحيوانات لمواطنها وتغيير بيئاتها.

## Causes
الأسباب

- Wastewater from sinks, toilets, and showers.

- مياه الصرف الناتجة عن الأحواض والمراحيض والاستحمام.

- Wastewater and chemicals from factories.

.مياه الصرف والمواد الكيميائية من المصانع.

- Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers.

.مياه الصرف من الأراضي الزراعية والمدن والتي تصب في الأنهار.

## Effects
التأثيرات



- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.

- المياه العكرة تجعل الأطفال وكبار السن يمرضون.

- Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.

.المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية في الأنهار.

## Solutions
الحلول



- Save as much water as possible.

- وفّر أكبر قدر ممكن من الماء.

- Take shorter showers.

- خذ دشًا في مدة قصيرة.

- Avoid running water.

- تجنب المياه الجارية.

- Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

.لا تلق القمامة في أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.



Help your child read about water pollution.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تلوث المياه.

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous .................................. taekwondo player.
   a) Egyptian b) Chinese c) Japanese d) French
2. Hedaya was born on .................................................. 21,1993.
   a) May b) March c) June d) April
3. She won a .................................................. medal in Tokyo 2021.
   a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) iron
4. She is a very .................................................. person.
   a) bad b) kind c) ugly d) naughty

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hedaya Malak won the bronze ..................................................
   a) pedal b) medal c) prize d) metal
2. Hedaya Malak carried the Egyptian ..................................................
   a) bag b) flag c) river d) handbag
3. Harmful chemicals cause water ..................................................
   a) solution b) information c) pollution d) invitation
4. Never throw .................................................. in or near a lake or beach.
   a) water b) plants c) mobiles d) garbage
5. Dirty water can make children and old people ..................................................
   a) ill b) well c) good d) kind

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

taekwondo - sports - Egyptian - famous - prizes

There are a lot of famous sports persons in our community. Hedaya Malak and Mohamed Salah are very ..........(1).......... My cousin Noha likes practicing ..........(2).......... . Her favorite sport is ..........(3).......... .She wants to be an athlete as Hedaya Malak. Hedaya is a famous ..........(4).......... taekwondo player.



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Water pollution can ............................................................ organisms.
   a) play  b) meet  c) kill  d) water
2. Water pollution cause animals to ........................................ their habitats.
   a) make  b) play  c) eat  d) change

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What causes water pollution?
..............................................................................................................
4. What can water pollution make for birds?
..............................................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what does hedaya do now?

..............................................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A biography about a famous Egyptian person

Guiding words:

(born - medal - score)

..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................
..............................................................................................................

# Review on Unit (2)

## Sports




tennis

handball


football


swimming

squash


sailing

karate


kung fu


greenhouse


taekwondo


jumping


drawing


cooking





football pitch


swimming goggles


tennis court


swimming pool


football boots


squash rackets

## I want to be healthy!




| | |
|---|---|
| cup | pot |
| sit | bat |

Long vowels

| | |
|---|---|
| rose | feet |
| cube | skate |

2- Syllables: One-syllable words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| red | neck | sock |

Two-syllable words.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ba-by | ti-ger | spi-der |
| mu-sic | win-dow | ra-cket |

- I'm very good at drawing.
- They are great at helping their mom.
- He is bad at football.

Math : Adding and subtracting decimals

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ +8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ -8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

Help your child revise unit (2).




* Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

## The sport you're good at

I'm good at playing football. It's a popular sport all over the world. Most people play it on football pitches. A football team has 11 players; one of them is a goalkeeper. The winning team scores the most goals. I like football very much.

## Sports and equipment

Most people like sports. Each sport has its equipment. To play football, you must have football boots. You need a football pitch to play on. To play tennis with a friend, you must have tennis rackets and a tennis ball. To go swimming, you must have goggles. To do karate, you must have a karate suit.

## A famous Egyptian athlete

Hedaya Malak is a very famous Egyptian sports person. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She won many prizes.

## Water pollution

When chemicals go into water, we call this water pollution. Polluted water can kill organisms. Wastewater from sinks, toilets and showers pollutes water. Dirty water can make children and old people ill. We must find quick solutions. We shouldn't throw garbage in water.

# Dictation on Unit (2)

## Lesson (1)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | الكونغ فو |
| .................... | الإسكواش |
| .................... | كرة القدم |
| .................... | كرة اليد |
| .................... | انبعاثات |
| .................... | صوبة زراعية |
| .................... | كابوس |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | التنس |
| .................... | الإبحار |
| .................... | السباحة |
| .................... | الكاراتيه |
| .................... | يتنفس |
| .................... | ظل |
| .................... | سام |

## Lesson (2)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | فريق |
| .................... | تنس الطاولة |
| .................... | شطرنج |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | قصيدة |
| .................... | اللغة الفرنسية |
| .................... | الرسم |

## Lesson (3)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | ملعب تنس |
| .................... | حذاء كرة قدم |
| .................... | نظارة سباحة |
| .................... | كرة التنس |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | ملعب كرة قدم |
| .................... | حمام سباحة |
| .................... | مضارب إسكواش |
| .................... | بدلة كاراتيه |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | ميدالية |
| .................... | هام - مهم |
| .................... | الحياة البرية |
| .................... | مصري |
| .................... | بطل |
| .................... | مشهور |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| .................... | سيرة ذاتية |
| .................... | متنافس |
| .................... | تلوث الماء |
| .................... | زراعي |
| .................... | مسطحات مائية |
| .................... | قمامة |

Help your child dictate these words. ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# Activities on Unit (2)

ـي الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adel likes ................................ as he can do lots of moves
   a) football b) handball c) karate d) basketball
2. Adel loves kung fu because he likes when he does ............ kicks
   a) low b) high c) slow d) fast
3. Hana likes to ........................................
   a) swim b) run c) kick d) jump
4. She often puts on her swimming goggles to protect her ............
   a) nose b) eyes c) ears d) mounth

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I play ................................ on a small court with walls all around
   a) karate b) squash c) football d) basketball
2. I wear football ........................................ to play football
   a) goggles b) sandals c) rackets d) boots
3. A bad dream is called a ........................................
   a) nightmare b) luck c) racket d) greenhouse
4. "................................" is to move air into and out of your lungs
   a) Breathe b) Sleep c) Toxic d) Shade

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

kill - garbage - habitats - beach - pollution

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas, we call this water pollution. Water ..........(1).......... can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also ..........(2).......... birds that eat the fish. It can cause animals to lose their homes and change their ..........(3).......... We shouldn't throw ..........(4).......... in or near a lake or beach.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She is practicing hard now. She really wants to win a gold medal in the future!

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Hedaya got the ........................ medal in Tokyo.
   a) gold b) iron c) bronze d) silver
2. Hedaya began practicing taekwondo at the age of ........................ .
   a) seven b) eight c) six d) ten

**B) Answer the following questions.**

1. Summarize the text in one sentence. ........................
2. What does Hedaya want to do in the future? ........................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. you - are - What - sports - at - good - ?
2. the - Hadaya Malak - medal - won - bronze - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Aya is good at ........................ (play) tennis.
2. My brother is great ........................ (for) swimming.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ i'm good at reading English ........................

## 8 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونية من (30) كلمة.

Your name is Sally. Your email address is Sally@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Eman and her email address is Eman@yahoo.com

A sports biography

Guiding words:

( Egyptian - taekwondo - won - bronze )



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

أكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

**play - you - So - football**

Omar : Hello, Ahmed. What's your favorite sport?
Ahmed : I'm good at 1) .................... so it's my favor
Omar : Great! Where do you 2) ....................
Ahmed : I usually play it at the club. What about 3) ....................
Omar : My favorite is tennis. I like watching matches on TV.
Ahmed : 4) .................... do I. Let's watch a match togeth

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

أكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

**less - look - pollution - Emissions**

Sara : How can air 1) .................... affect our heal
Hany : 2) ..... from cars and factories can be dangerous for our lun
Sara : How can we 3) .................... after our plan
Hany : We should use our cars 4) .................... and use our bikes mo

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

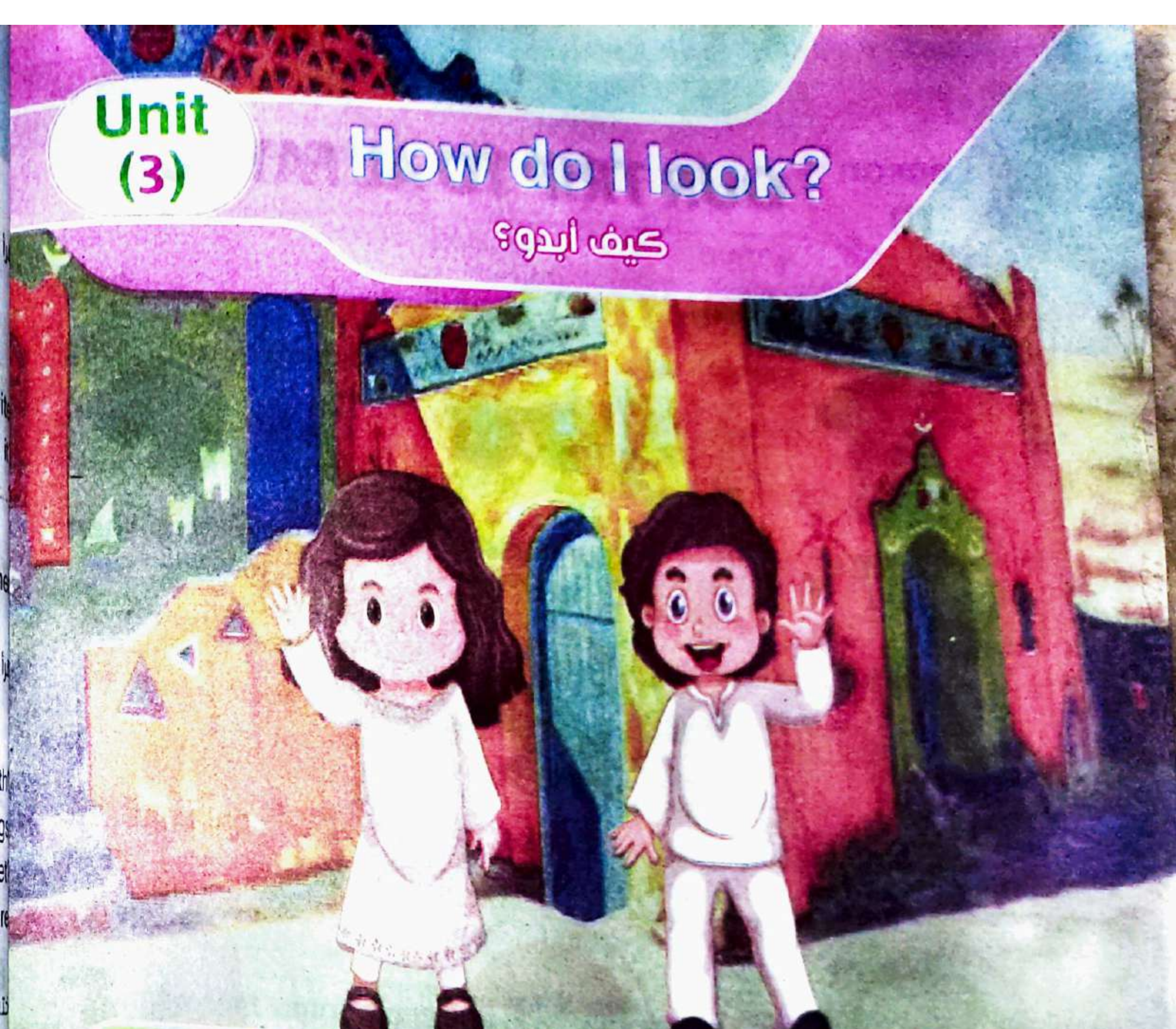
الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hani is very good at .................... karat
   a) do b) did c) doing d) does
2. Mai is good .................... making cake
   a) at b) for c) on d) to
3. Malak is good at ....................
   a) swim b) swims c) swam d) swimmin
4. Ahmed is good at ....................
   a) plays tennis b) play tennis c) played tennis d) tennis
5. We are bad at .................... poem
   a) writing b) wrote c) writes d) write


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Unit (3) How do I look?

## كيف أبدو؟



### *In this unit the student will ...*

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأنواع المختلفة من الملابس.
- listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.
  يستمع إلى محادثة عن حزم الحقائب لقضاء عطلة.
- practice using the infinitive of purpose.
  يمارس استخدام مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الغرض.
- read a traditional folktale.
  يقرأ حكاية شعبية تقليدية.
- learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/, and /Id/.
  يتعلم كيفية نطق نهايات الماضي البسيط /d/، /t/، /Id/.
- multiply multi-digit numbers.
  يضرب أعداد متعددة الأرقام.
- write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.
  يكتب وصفًا للملابس المفضلة مستخدمًا الصفات.
- research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.
  يبحث ويصمم منشورًا عن الملابس التقليدية من كل أنحاء العالم.

Lesson (1)

# OUR TRIP TO AL FAYOUM

**Listen and say.** استمع وقل.


T-shirt
تي شيرت


sunglasses
نظارة شمسية


swimming shorts
شورت للسباحة (مايوه)


sweater
بلوفر - سترة


sneakers
حذاء رياضي


pajamas
بيجامة


necklace
قلادة / عِقد


umbrella
مظلة


coat
معطف


galabeya
جلابية


uniform
زي موحد


scarf
كوفية / وشاح

Help your child identify these words.




## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| cool | بارد باعتدال - جميل | holiday | إجازة | sunny | مشمس |
| suitcase | حقيبة سفر | trip | رحلة | pearl | لؤلؤة |
| pool | حمام سباحة - مسبح | stripes | خطوط | striped | مقلّم - مخطط |
| man-made | من صنع الإنسان | really | حقًا | spotted | منقط |
| shopping mall | مركز تسوق | lovely | جميل - رائع | comfortable | مريح |
| traditional | تقليدي | modern | حديث | Al Fayoum | مدينة الفيوم |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| pack | يعد الحقيبة | packed | know | يعرف | knew |
| wait | ينتظر | waited | take | يأخذ | took |
| need | يحتاج | needed | wear | يرتدي | wore |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| It's so exciting! | إنه أمر مثير جدًا! | I can't wait | لا أطيق الانتظار |
| I'm excited to see them. | أنا مسرور لرؤيتهم. | for ages | لفترة طويلة |
| That's my favorite. | إنه المفضل لدي. | come from | يأتي من |
| on your feet | في قدميك | need to | يجب أن / بحاجة إلى |
| walk around a lot | يتجول كثيرًا | share with | يتشارك مع |
| in the evenings | في أوقات المساء | come on | هيا |
| with stripes | ذات خطوط | find out | يكتشف |

Help your child identify these words.

## Listen and read.

**Mom** : Asser, we need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

يا آسر، يجب أن نحزم حقائبنا لقضاء إجازتنا غدًا.

**Asser** : It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

إنه أمر مثير للغاية! لا أطيق الانتظار للذهاب إلى الفيوم لرؤية العم حاتم والعمة ملك. وبالطبع فارس ودينا.

**Mom** : I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

أنا أعرف. أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم أيضًا. لم نرهم منذ فترة طويلة! ولكن هيا، نحن بحاجة إلى حزم حقائبنا!

**Asser** : OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

حسنًا، يجب أن أحزم التي شيرت الأخضر وسراويل السباحة الخاصة بي لأن لديهم مسبحًا جميلًا، أليس كذلك؟

**Mom** : Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

نعم، وتذكر نظارتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمسًا جدًا.

**Asser** : Will I need a coat and a scarf?

هل سأحتاج إلى معطف وكوفية؟

**Mom** : No, Asser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

لا، يا آسر. لن تحتاج. ولكن يجب أن تحزم سترة (بلوفر). يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا في المساء.

**Asser** : OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

حسنًا، سأحزم سترتي الزرقاء. إنها المفضلة لدي.

**Mom** : You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

ستحتاج إلى حذائك الرياضي لأننا سنتجول كثيرًا. وتحتاج إلى ارتداء شيء مريح في قدميك.

**Asser** : What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

ماذا عن أفضل جلابية لدي؟ هل سأحتاج إلى الجلابية التي أعطتها لي الجدة؟

**Mom** : No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

لا، لن تحتاج. لكنني سآخذ قلادتي الذهبية.

**Asser** : Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool!

همم. حسنًا. ماذا أحتاج أيضًا؟ آه، أنا أعرف! بيجامتي! سآخذ البيجامة المقلمة. إنها حقًا جميلة!

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Narrator | : | 1 |
| Speaker | : | Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought some striped pajamas. |
| Narrator | : | 2 |
| Speaker | : | Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella. |
| Narrator | : | 3 |
| Speaker | : | Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform. |
| Narrator | : | 4 |
| Speaker | : | Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf. |



## Language Functions

**1- Expressing necessity:**

للتعبير عن الضرورة:

I / We / You / They + need to + inf. (المصدر) ......

He / She / It + needs to + inf. (المصدر) ......

e.g. She needs to pack her suitcase.

**2- Talking about future events:**

الحديث عن الأحداث المستقبلية:

will ( 'll ) + inf. (المصدر) ......

e.g. He will pack his blue T-shirt.

**3- Giving advice:**

إعطاء النصيحة:

Subject + should / shouldn't + inf. (المصدر) ......

e.g. - You should pack a sweater. - You shouldn't sleep late.

Help your child listen and read the dialog. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.

# Activities

ع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Noha will .................................................. her suit
   a) pack b) play c) eat d) think
2. Noha is ..................................................
   a) sad b) bad c) excited d) slow
3. Noha needs to pack her green ..................................
   a) sweeter b) dress c) skirt d) T-shirt
4. It's .................................................. at n
   a) hot b) cool c) rainy d) cloudy

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

كمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

holiday - packing - lovely - sunglasses - sweater

Asser and his mom are going on a holiday to Al Fay
They are going to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. They
a .........(1)......... pool. So, Asser is .........(2)......... his T-
and swimming shorts to swim in the pool. He is packing
.........(3)......... because it will be sunny. He is also packing
.........(4)......... because it can be cool in the evenings.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

كلمة الصحيحة.

1. We need to .................................. our suitcases for our holi
   a) pack b) back c) broke d) bake
2. I can't .................................. to go to Alexandria and swim in the
   a) want b) went c) wait d) feel
3. We're going to the beach. I need to pack my ..................
   a) swimming shorts b) sweater c) T-shirt d) pajama

4. When I play football, I wear a ................................ .
   a) scarf   b) T-shirt   c) sweater   d) pajamas
5. I'll take my ................................ . It can be very cold.
   a) T-shirt   b) coat   c) pajamas   d) necklace
6. My mum wears a gold ................................ .
   a) scarf   b) necklace   c) dress   d) sweater
7. When it rains, I take my ................................ .
   a) sunglasses   b) umbrella   c) shorts   d) T-shirt

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. excited - I'm - see - my - to - uncle - .

................................................................

2. have - lovely - They - a - pool - .

................................................................

3. need - What - do - to - I - pack - ?

................................................................

4. Asser - is - Who - to - going - visit - ?

................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ i'll take my sweater

................................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words:

Our trip to Al Fayoum

(pack - sunglasses - hot)

Lesson (2)

# MY FAVORITE CLOTHES

## Key Vocabulary المفردات الأساسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| robe | ثوب | belt | حزام | spotted | |
| gloves | قفازات | crown | تاج | striped | |
| costume | زي | pocket | جيب | sleeves | |

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Egyptian clothing | الملابس المصرية | useful | مفيد | colorful | |
| information | معلومات | patterns | نقوش | dress | |
| Sham El-Nessim | شم النسيم | Eid | العيد | essay | |
| popular | شعبي - محبوب - شائع | grades | درجات | hidden | |
| festival | احتفال - مهرجان | hall | صالة | wedding | |



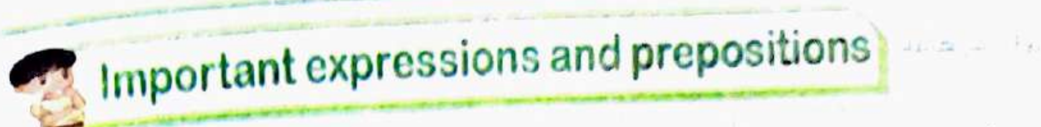
## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| borrow | يستعير | borrowed | help | يساعد | helped |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated | protect | يحمي | protect |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| wear | يرتدي | wore | sleep | ينام | slept |
| leave | يغادر | left | tell | يخبر | told |
| give | يعطي | gave | catch | يلحق - يمسك | caugh |



## Important expressions and prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| of course | بالطبع | on her head | على رأسها |
| look like a princess | تشبه أميرة | on her hands | على يديها |
| It looks really cool. | تبدو جميلة حقا. | a special festival | احتفال خاص |
| made from | مصنوع من | on holiday | في إجازة |
| good grades | درجات جيدة | do a project | يقوم بمشروع |
| traditional Egyptian clothes | ملابس مصرية تقليدية | | |

استمع واقرأ.

## Listen and read.

**Thomas** : Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

مرحبا يا فارس. هل يمكنك أن تساعدني؟ أنا أقوم بمشروع مدرسي عن الملابس المصرية. هل يمكنك أن تعطيني بعض المعلومات؟

**Fares** : Hi, Thomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

مرحبا توماس. نعم بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟

**Thomas** : Well, what do you usually wear?

حسنا، ماذا ترتدي عادة؟

**Fares** : I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

أعيش في سوهاج. والجو عادة ما يكون حارا جدا هنا. اليوم، أنا أرتدي شورت وتي شيرت.

**Thomas** : Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?

رائع! هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن بعض الملابس المصرية التقليدية؟

**Fares** : Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.

أوه، بالتأكيد. حسنا يرتدي كثير من الرجال الجلابية. وهي عبارة عن ثوب أبيض طويل وهي محبوبة جدا.

**Thomas** : Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

نعم، لقد رأيتها. فهي تبدو رائعة حقا للارتداء.

Help your child listen and read the dialog. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ الحوار.

**Fares** : Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!

نعم إنها رائعة لأنها مصنوعة من القطن. وهي عادة بيضاء ولكن يمكنك أن تحصل على ألوان أخرى أيضًا. والأكمام طويلة لذلك لا نتعرض لحروق الشمس.

**Thomas** : Are there pockets?

هل بها جيوب؟

**Fares** : Yes! But they're hidden – you can't see them from the outside.

نعم، لكنها مخفية - لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.

**Thomas** : Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

هل ترتدون الجلاليب عند الاحتفال بمهرجان خاص؟

**Fares** : We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

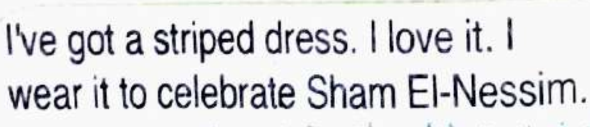
نعم، والملابس التي نرتديها في العيد على سبيل المثال جميلة جدًا. ويمكن أن تكون الملابس ملونة. وأحيانًا يكون عليها نقوش جميلة.

**Thomas** : Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

شكرًا فارس. هذا مفيد حقًا!

## Read and role-play.

اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.




My favorite thing is my sweater. It's blue and it has a pocket. I wear it when I travel.

الشيء المفضل لدي هو سترتي. إنها زرقاء وبها جيب. وأنا ارتديها عندما أسافر.

# Language Focus

## 1- Infinitive of purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

- **We use** (to + infinitive) **to express purpose; and to say why someone does something.**

نستخدم ( المصدر + to) للتعبير عن الغرض ولبيان لماذا يقوم الشخص بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. Why did she go to town?

- She went to town to buy a dress. ذهبت إلى المدينة لكي تشتري فستانا.

e.g. Why did you go to the hall?

- I went to the hall to get my coat. ذهبت إلى الصالة لكي أحضر معطفي.

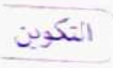
## 2- The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

**Usage** الاستخدام

يستخدم ليدل على حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي

e.g. He traveled to Aswan last year.

Mayar made a cake two days ago.

**Form** 

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة (d, ed, ied) للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ كما هو.

play ⟶ played  go ⟶ went

**Negative** النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. I didn't play football yesterday.

She didn't go to the zoo last week.

## (Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf.(المصدر) ......?

e.g. Did you see your friends yesterday?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

## Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf.(المصدر) ......?

e.g. Why did you go to your bedroom?

- I went to my bedroom to sleep.

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | ago | منذ | in the past | في الماضي |
| in + (تاريخ ماضي) | في... | last (week - month - year) | | | (الأسبوع، الشهر، العام) الماضي |

e.g. They went to the library yesterday.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. I went to the library .................................................... a book.
   a) borrowing b) borrow c) borrows d) to borrow
2. Injy used a pen .................................................... her essay.
   a) to write b) writing c) write d) wrote
3. He bought a new suitcase .................................................... on holiday.
   a) taking b) take c) to take d) takes
4. Malak wears her sunglasses .................................................... her eyes.
   a) protecting b) to protect c) protect d) protects
5. Basma went to the club to .................................................... tennis.
   a) playing b) played c) plays d) play

6. Omar played tennis ........................................ .
   a) next week   b) tomorrow   c) yesterday   d) last

7. I went to the shop ........................................ some bread.
   a) buy   b) buying   c) buys   d) to buy

8. I didn't ........................................ a racket last week.
   a) buy   b) bought   c) buys   d) buying

9. ........................................ you meet your friends yesterday?
   a) Do   b) Did   c) Are   d) Were

10. Hazem ........................................ hard last year to get good grades.
   a) study   b) studies   c) studying   d) studied

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I went to my bedroom to ........................................ (sleeping).
2. My teacher uses a red pen to ........................................ (corrects) homework.
3. Tarek bought a racket to ........................................ (plays) tennis.
4. Basel called Younis to ........................................ (asking) for help.
5. Sherif ........................................ (buy) a new suitcase yesterday.
6. Injy ........................................ (goes) to the library last Monday.
7. We ........................................ (study) hard to get good grades last month.
8. I ........................................ (wear) a galabeya to stay cool last night.
9. Malak went to the shop ........................................ (in) buy some bread.
10. We ........................................ (go) to the park two weeks ago.

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Marwa is wearing a ..........................
   a) costume  b) skirt  c) sneakers  d) blouse
2. Marwa looks like a ..........................
   a) vet  b) princess  c) teacher  d) clown
3. Marwa is wearing a spotted ..........................
   a) skirt  b) socks  c) blouse  d) dress
4. Marwa has white .......................... on her hands
   a) crown  b) scarf  c) gloves  d) socks

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. I bought some sunglasses .......................... on holiday
   a) wear  b) to wear  c) wore  d) wears
2. We went to the park .......................... with our friends
   a) playing  b) play  c) to play  d) plays
3. Hazem studied hard .......................... good grades
   a) gets  b) get  c) to get  d) got
4. Tarek .......................... a racket yesterday
   a) buy  b) bought  c) buying  d) buys
5. Basel .......................... take his bag last week
   a) don't  b) didn't  c) doesn't  d) isn't

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pen - crown - gloves - spotted - pockets

Sarah and Nour are in a party. Sarah is wearing a ..........(1).......... dress with two ..........(2).......... . Nour is wearing a ..........(3).......... on her head. She looks like a princess! She is wearing white ..........(4).......... on her hands. She is wearing a costume.



Help your child deal with such questions.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday Samy and his father went to the clothes shop. They needed to buy some clothes for Eid. Samy bought blue shorts and white T-shirt. His father bought a white galabeya with pockets. Samy bought a striped dress for his mother. Samy's mother was happy and thanked him. The next morning, all the family went to Alexandria to celebrate Eid.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Samy needed to buy .................................................... for Eid.
   a) clothes b) food c) meat d) desserts
2. Smay bought a striped ........................................ for his mother.
   a) scarf b) shirt c) dress d) skirt

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where did Samy's family go in Eid? ........................................
4. What did samy's father buy? ........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. went - I - my - to sleep - bedroom - to - .

........................................................................................................

2. the party - the train - Nayera - to catch - left - .

........................................................................................................

3. town - She - to - a dress - to buy - went - .

........................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Sami went to town to ........................................ (buying) new sneakers.
2. Ali used the internet ........................................ (for) do a project.
3. Heba ........................................ (go) to the park last Friday.
4. Mona ........................................ (travel) to Aswan yesterday.
5. Nayera ........................................ (leave) the party to catch the train.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# - THE ELVES AND THE ...
# - Pronunciation
# - Math

## Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

| Word | Meaning | Word | Meaning | Word | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| kind | عطوف - طيب | honest | أمين | poor | فقير |
| happy | سعيد | tired | مُتعَب - مُرهق | beautiful | جميل |
| amazing | مذهل | delicious | لذيذ | new | جديد |
| elves | الجن - عفاريت - أقزام | shoemaker | صانع الأحذية | leather | جلد "مدبوغ" |

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| Word | Meaning | Word | Meaning | Word | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| town | مدينة صغيرة | amazed | مندهش | workshop | ورشة |
| enough | كاف | wife | زوجة | dear | عزيزي |
| quickly | بسرعة | surprised | متفاجئ / مندهش | money | نقود |
| meal | وجبة | perfect | ممتاز - رائع | tonight | الليلة |



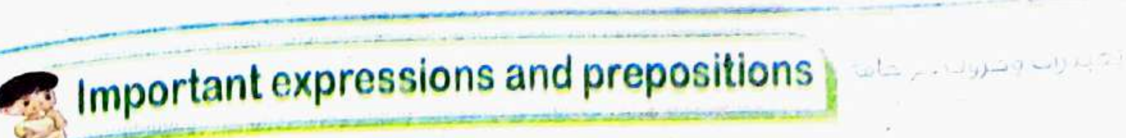
## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| walk | يمشي | walked |
| describe | يصف | described |
| call | ينادي | called |
| thank | يشكر | thanked |
| dance | يرقص | danced |
| arrive | يصل | arrived |
| believe | يعتقد | believed |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| cut out | يقطع | cut out |
| go | يذهب | went |
| say | يقول | said |
| pay | يدفع | paid |
| hide | يختبئ | hid |
| leave | يغادر - يترك | left |
| sit | يجلس | sat |



## Important expressions and prepositions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| work hard | يعمل بجد | a pair of shoes | زوج من الأحذية |
| in the morning | في الصباح | try on | يجرب - يقيس (ملابس) |
| for the night | لمدة ليلة واحدة | find out | يكتشف |
| once upon a time | ذات مرة (في يوم من الأيام) | all over the land | في شتى بقاع الأرض |
| arrive home | يصل البيت | call to | ينادي على |

## THE ELVES AND THE SHOEMAKER العفاريت وصانع الأحذية

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

ذات مرة، كان صانع أحذية طيب وأمين يعيش في المدينة مع زوجته. كانا فقيرين جدًا، ولكنهما كانا سعداء. عمل صانع الأحذية بجد، ولكن لم يكن لديه مال.

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

في ذات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية في ورشته. وقال "يا إلهي، لدي فقط جلد كافٍ لزوج واحد من الأحذية. ولكنني مُتعب جدًا لدرجة أنني لا أستطيع صنعها الليلة. سوف أقطع الجلد الآن وأقوم بعمل الحذاء في الصباح." قام صانع الأحذية بقطع الجلد، وذهب للنوم.

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

وفي الصباح التالي، لم يستطع صانع الأحذية أن يصدق عينيه. استدعى زوجته للحضور بسرعة إلى الورشة. قال صانع الأحذية: "انظري إلى هذا الحذاء!". هناك، على طاولته كان يوجد زوج رائع من الأحذية. بدت الزوجة مندهشة وقالت: "إنها جميلة. هل قمت بصنعها؟". قال: "لا يا عزيزتي، لم أصنعه."



Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're prefect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife," go and buy some more leather."
The shoemaker went to buy some more leather. When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

ثم دخل إلى المحل رجل وقال " لم أر قط مثل هذا الحذاء المدهش. هل يمكنني أن أقيسه؟" فقام بقياس الحذاء وقال "إنه ملائمين لي" ودفع لصانع الأحذية ثمنه. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية" بسرعة, اذهب واشترِ المزيد من الجلد." ذهب صانع الأحذية لشراء المزيد من الجلود. و عندما وصل للبيت، كانت زوجة صانع الأحذية قد أعدت له وجبة لذيذة. قال: "سوف أقطع الجلد ثم آتي لآكل." قام صانع الأحذية بقطع الجلد لزوجين من الأحذية وترك الورشة طوال الليل

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us."

وفي صباح اليوم التالي كان صانع الأحذية وزوجته مندهشين لرؤية زوجين جميلين من الأحذية في الورشة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية "يجب أن نعرف من يصنع هذه الأحذية. هيا نختبئ الليلة ونرى من يساعدنا."

That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

وفي تلك الليلة، قام صانع الأحذية بقطع الجلد ثم اختبأ. كانا متفاجئين عند رؤية عفريتين صغيرين من الجن. بدأ العفريتان في عمل الأحذية. وسرعان ما صنعا زوجين من الأحذية الجميلة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "يجب أن نشكرهما. هيا نصنع لهما ملابس جديدة."

The next night, the elves found their new clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes. Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

وفي الليلة التالية، وجد العفريتان ملابسهما الجديدة. كانا سعداء جدًا لدرجة أنهما رقصا حول الورشة قبل أن يجلسا ليصنعا المزيد من الأحذية. وسرعان ما جاء الناس من جميع أرجاء الأرض لكي يشتروا أحذية صانع الأحذية. لم يعد صانع الأحذية وزوجته فقراء مرة أخرى وعاشا في سعادة دائمة.

## ☆ Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

1. Was the shoemaker rich? ........................................
2. Who were helping the shoemaker? ........................................
3. What did the shoemaker and his wife make for the elves? ........................................

# PRONUNCIATION

## How to pronounce (ed)

كيف تنطق حرفي (ed) في نهاية الفعل الماضي

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بالأصوات /d/ و /t/ تنطق (ed) /Id/.

want → wanted

end → ended

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بهذه الأصوات /p/ , /s/ , /f/ , /ʃ/ , /k/ , /tʃ/ تنطق (ed) /t/.

hope → hoped

fix → fixed

watch → watched

laugh → laughed

wash → washed

like → liked

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بهذه الأصوات /b/ , /z/ , /g/ , /l/ , /m/ , /n/ , /r/ , /v/ , vowel suond تنطق (ed) /d/.

play → played

clean → cleaned

## more examples

مزيد من الأمثلة

| /d/ | /t/ | /Id/ |
|---|---|---|
| called | walked | waited |
| climbed | dressed | studied |
| lived | chopped | needed |

## Listen and write the verbs in the correct group.

استمع واكتب الأفعال في المجموعة الصحيحة.

- asked
- waited
- promised
- counted
- carried
- slowed
- delivered
- fixed
- tasted

| /d/ | /t/ | /Id/ |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

# Math: Multiply multi-digit numbers

ضرب الأعداد بها أكثر من رقم.

## Multiply Multi-digit numbers

1. 10 x 10 = 100
2. 30 x 20 = 600
3. 50 x 50 = 2500
4. 38 x 24 = 912

## Think and do the sums.

فكر وحل المسائل.

1. 15 x 31 = ..........
2. 20 x 40 = ..........
3. 42 x 20= ..........
4. 12 x 12 = ..........

### A life problem

مسألة حياتية

For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order?

Answer : 12 X 18 = 216



## Solve the following problem.

حل المسألة التالية.

Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks?

..........................................................................

### Did you know ?

-If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!

إذا قمت بضرب أي رقم في صفر يكون الناتج صفراً!



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. He is .............................................. . He has no money.
   a) rich b) smart c) wealthy d) poor
2. I love this meal. It's .............................................. .
   a) dirty b) delicious c) bad d) terrible
3. The shoemaker works in a .............................................. .
   a) ship b) hospital c) workshop d) rocket
4. Our teacher is .............................................. . We all love him.
   a) bad b) unkind c) ugly d) kind

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pair - hid - wife - leather - shoes

A shoemaker and his wife were poor and only had one piece of leather to make one pair of shoes. The next morning, they found out that the ..........(1).......... of shoes were made. They sold them and bought more ..........(2).......... to make more shoes. He woke up again to find more ..........(3).......... were made. He and his wife ..........(4).......... to see who was making the shoes. They were very surprised to see two little elves.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. worked - The - hard - shoemaker - .

..............................................................................................

2. very - were - poor - They - .

..............................................................................................

3. He - with - in - lived - wife - town - his - .

..............................................................................................

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, there was a poor shoemaker. One da
he slept after he bought some leather at the market because h
was tired. When he woke up, he found a very pretty pair of sho
on his table. He sold them and bought some food and mo
leather. The next morning he found three elves making anoth
pair of shoes. He thanked them and his wife gave them foo
and clothes. They made more and more. Everyone bought shoe
from the shoemaker. He lived happily ever after.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The shoemaker was ..............................
   a) sick  b) poor  c) bad  d) angry
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ..............................
   a) shoes  b) elves  c) leather  d) market

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. How many elves did the shoemaker find? ..............................
4. What did the wife give to the elves? ..............................

جد الناتج.

## 5 Find the product.

1. 20 x 50 = ..............
2. 12 x 16 = ..............
3. 22 x 33 = ..............
4. 15 x 37 = ..............

المسائل الكلامية الآتية.

## 6 Solve the following problems.

a) Ali bought 15 books. Each book has 80 pages.

⇨ How many pages are there in all?

..............................................................................

b) Nada saw 12 trees. In each tree, there were 22 birds.

⇨ How many birds did Nada see in all?

..............................................................................




# WRITING & PROJECT



## Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| tie | كرافتة - رابطة عنق | trousers | بنطلون - سروال |
| smart | أنيق | pale | باهت (اللون) |
| school uniform | زي مدرسي | dark | غامق (اللون) |
| vest | صديري | student | طالب |
| checked | على شكل مربعات / كاروه | feast | عيد |



## Extra Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hat | قبعة | colorful | ملون |
| skirt | جيبة | celebrations | احتفالات |
| jacket | جاكيت | sombrero | السومبريرو (قبعة مكسيكية) |
| socks | جورب | leaflet | منشور - نشرة |
| gold | ذهب | silver | فضة |
| linen | كتان | style | نمط - أسلوب |



## Countries دول

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Mexico | المكسيك | Finland | فنلندا |
| India | الهند | Japan | اليابان |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| have to | يجب أن | pale blue shirt | قميص أزرق باهت |
| in summer | في الصيف | dark blue trousers | بنطال أزرق غامق |
| bright colors | ألوان زاهية | checked skirt | جيبة كاروه |
| light green shorts | شورت أخضر فاتح | short-sleeved | ذو أكمام قصيرة |



Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.





## Listen and read.



### Student (A)

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

قًا أحب الزي المدرسي. يرتدي الجميع قميصًا أبيض بأكمام قصيرة. وترتدي البنات جيبة زرقاء والأولاد يرتدون بناطيل
ء. يجب أن نرتدي جميعًا جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلدية سوداء. الطقس ليس باردًا جدًا هنا لكن عندما يكون باردًا نرتدي
زتنا الزرقاء.



### Student (B)

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

لمدرسة أرتدي قميصًا أزرقًا باهت اللون وبنطلون أزرق غامق. يجب أن نرتدي رابطة عنق كل يوم. ورابطة العنق لونها
غامق وبها خطوط زرقاء خفيفة. وترتدي البنات في مدرستي أيضًا قمصان زرقاء باهتة اللون ولكن لا يرتدين بناطيل. فهم
ن تنورة (جيبة) كاروهات ذات لون أبيض و أزرق. ولا يجب عليهن ارتداء رابطة عنق.



### Student (C)

Our school uniform is really smart. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

زي مدرستنا أنيق حقًا. يجب أن نرتدي قميصًا أبيض ورابطة عنق حمراء. و نرتدي
جيبة رمادية داكنة و جاكيت أزرق.

Student (D)



The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.

يرتدي الأولاد والبنات أزياء مختلفة في مدرستي. يرتدي الأولاد شورت أخضر فاتح وجوارب خضراء طويلة. نرتدي قمصانًا بيضاء ولدينا سترات حمراء داكنة عندما يكون الطقس باردًا. زي أختي مختلف. فهي ترتدي جيبة زرقاء وتي شيرت أصفر.

Student (E)

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. I like my uniform!

ترتدي البنات في مدرستي جيبة زرقاء داكنة والأولاد يرتدون شورت أزرق غامق، وقميص قطني أزرق فاتح، وجورب أبيض وحذاء أسود؛ عندما يكون الطقس باردًا نرتدي صديري أزرق غامق أو جاكيت. أحب الزي الخاص بي!

**Read again and write (T) True or (F) False.** اقرأ ثانية واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. At student A's school, students wear black leather shoes. ( )
2. At student B's school, the boys wear a blue and white checked skirt. ( )
3. The boys at student D's school wear long green socks. ( )

# Order of adjective

ترتيب الصفات

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way:

...د وصف شيء بأكثر من صفة لابد أن نراعي ترتيب الصفات كالتالي :

size → age → color → material → Noun

المقاس + العمر + اللون + المادة الخام + الاسم

e.g. I have a small new white cotton T-shirt.

**Study the following table.**

...ن هذا الجدول (لاحظ ترتيب الصفات).

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1- size | الحجم / المقاس | → big كبير - small | ...غير |
| 2- age | العمر | → old قديم - new | جديد |
| 3- color | اللون | → black أسود - white | ...يض |
| 4- material | المادة الخام | → cotton قطن - linen | كتان |

- She wore a green, cotton dress.
- He had to wear an old, orange hat.
- Dad bought a new, white galabeya.

**Put the following adjectives in the correct order.**

...م الصفات الآتية بالترتيب الصحيح.

1. I bought a .................................................. racket.
   (black - big - new...
2. He sold his .................................................. car.
   (old - white - sma...
3. She wears a .................................................. dress.
   (green - new - sma...
4. The shoemaker made .................................................. shoes.
   (...ther - new...



# Writing skills

## How to write a description of your favorite clothes.

كيفية كتابة وصف للملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لك.

My favorite clothes are ............... .
I have a , ............... which ............... .
I also like ............... .
They are my favorite because ............... .

الملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لي هي ..........
أنا لدي ..........، والتي ..........
أنا أيضًا أحب ..........
هذه الملابس مفضلة بالنسبة لي لأنها ..........

My favorite clothes are trousers and shirts. I have a small leather bag, which is black. I also like linen shirts. They're my favorite because they are comfortable.

انظر واقرأ.

## Look and read.

# CLOTHES IN MEXICO



These girls are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts and celebrations.

ترتدي هؤلاء الفتيات فساتين مكسيكية تقليدية. انظر! إنها زاهية. هناك الكثير من الخطوط الملونة على الفساتين. ترتدي الفتيات في المكسيك مثل هذه الفساتين أثناء الأعياد و الاحتفالات.

Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

تحب الفتيات المكسيكيات الألوان الزاهية. حتى عندما لا يحتفلون، فإنهم يرتدين ملابس ملونة زاهية.

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero – it's a traditional Mexican hat.

يرتدي الناس في المكسيك قبعات لحماية وجوههم من الشمس. وهذه قبعة السومبريرو - وهي قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.



There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

هناك أنواع مختلفة من السومبريرو بعضها به خطوط، و البعض زاهي الألوان. حتى أن بعض القبعات بها ذهب وفضة.



Help your child read about clothes in Mexico.
ساعد طفلك ان يقرا عن الملابس

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

dresses - Mexican - wearing - feasts - colorful

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very ..........(1).......... . There are lots of colorful stripes on the..........(2).......... . They wear them during ..........(3).......... and celebrations. ..........(4).......... girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. We have to wear a .................................... every day.
   a) tie b) pen c) bag d) book
2. Our school uniform is really .................................... . We like it.
   a) dirty b) ugly c) smart d) bad
3. I bought a .................................... jacket.
   a) green new b) cotton white c) new green d) white new
4. My favorite .................................... are the shirt and trousers.
   a) clothes b) colors c) food d) sports
5. My favorite .................................... is blue.
   a) color b) subject c) drink d) size

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. Mexico - hats - wear - People - in - .
....................................................................................................
2. like - uniform - I - school - really - our - .
....................................................................................................
3. girls - bright - Mexican - colors - love - .
....................................................................................................

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. At school I wear a pale blue ..........................................................

   a) shirt  b) skirt  c) shorts  d) shoes

2. We have to wear a .......................................................... every day.

   a) dress  b) hat  c) belt  d) tie

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Do the girls have to wear a tie? ..........................................................
4. What color is the tie? ..........................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ these girls are wearing dresses

..........................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My school uniform

Guiding words:

(boys - shirt - socks - trousers - girls - tie - blue shirt)

..........................................................

..........................................................

..........................................................

# Review on Unit (3)

## Clothes


T-shirt


scarf


sweater


necklace


pajamas



galabeya


pocket


sleeves


swimming shorts


spotted



striped


sunglasses

- She went to town to buy a sweater.
- I bought some sunglasses to wear on holiday.

Did you see your friends yesterday?




### Order of adjectives




- I have a small new white cotton T-shirt.

## How do I look?

Language · Phonics




played
enjoyed
cleaned

/t/

asked
promised
fixed




waited
tidied
tasted

$10 \times 10 = 100$

$30 \times 20 = 600$

$50 \times 50 = 2500$

$38 \times 24 = 912$

- If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!




**Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

## *My favorite clothes*

My favorite clothes are galabeys. Galabeyas are the most popular traditional Egyptian clothes. The galabeya is a long white robe. They are usually made from cotton. Galabeyas are beautiful and cool. Galabeyas have hidden pockets and long sleeves. We wear galabeyas in special festivals.

## *A trip to Al Fayoum*

I'll go to Al Fayoum with my family tomorrow. We'll visit my uncle Ali and cousins. We need to pack our suitcases. I'll take my swimming shorts to swim in the pool. I'll take my sunglasses. It will be very sunny. I can't wait to go there and see them.

## *Clothes in Mexico*

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on their dresses. They wear them during feasts and celebrations. Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

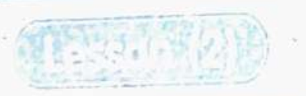
## *My school uniform*

I'm Sara. I'm in primary five. I like my school uniform. We wear a short-sleeved white shirt and black trousers. We wear white socks and black shoes. When it is cold, we wear our blue sweaters.

# Dictation on Unit (3)

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | بيجامة |
| ........................ | سترة - بلوفر |
| ........................ | مقلم |
| ........................ | منقط |
| ........................ | بارد باعتدال - جميل |
| ........................ | نظارة شمسية |
| ........................ | قلادة - عقد |
| ........................ | حقيبة سفر |
| ........................ | كوفية - وشاح |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | مشمس |
| ........................ | رحلة |
| ........................ | حمام سباحة - مسبح |
| ........................ | من صنع الإنسان |
| ........................ | مركز تسوق |
| ........................ | جميل - رائع |
| ........................ | خطوط |
| ........................ | يعد الحقيبة |
| ........................ | حذاء رياضي |



| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | قفازات |
| ........................ | زي |
| ........................ | ثوب |
| ........................ | ملون |
| ........................ | مخفي |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | أكمام |
| ........................ | جيب |
| ........................ | حزام |
| ........................ | معلومات |
| ........................ | احتفال |



| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | مذهل |
| ........................ | لذيذ |
| ........................ | عفاريت - الجن - أقزام |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | عطوف - طيب |
| ........................ | أمين |
| ........................ | فقير |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | أنيق |
| ........................ | قميص أزرق غامق |
| ........................ | سروال - بنطلون |

| Word | Meaning |
| --- | --- |
| ........................ | زي مدرسي |
| ........................ | ذو أكمام قصيرة |
| ........................ | كرافتة - رابطة عنق |

# Activities on Unit (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mona goes to the party with her ................................................ .
   a) sister   b) mother   c) aunt   d) grandma
2. Mona is wearing as a ................................................ .
   a) doctor   b) nurse   c) vet   d) princess
3. Mona has white ................................................ on her hands.
   a) dress   b) gloves   c) scarf   d) skirt
4. Mona has a crown on her ................................................ .
   a) hand   b) neck   c) head   d) leg

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. The ........................ is one of the traditional Egyptian clothes.
   a) galabeya   b) belt   c) crown   d) pocket
2. Women wear ........................ around their necks.
   a) belts   b) necklaces   c) sweaters   d) sneakers
3. It's very cold, so I'll take my ........................ .
   a) sunglasses   b) sweater   c) shorts   d) T-shirt
4. She's wearing a ........................ skirt.
   a) spot   b) spotted   c) spoil   d) spots

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

favorite - suitcase - stripes - shorts - pajamas

I'll go on a trip to Al Fayoum tomorrow. I'll pack my (1).................. . I'll need to take my sunglasses and (2).................. because it will be hot and sunny. I'll take my (3).................. pajamas. I like wearing the ones with the (4).................. . I won't take my sweater. I'll stay there for seven days.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! I'm Hany. I'm in grade five. I live in Cairo. I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Hany is in grade ..............................
   a) four  b) five  c) six  d) three
2. Hany lives in ..............................
   a) Cairo  b) Giza  c) Aswan  d) Tanta

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do the girls wear? ..............................
4. What can they wear when it is cold? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. went - I - bedroom - my - to - to - sleep - .

..............................

2. Why - Tarek - did - a suit - make - ?

..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I go to the library to .............................. (borrowing) books.
2. I .............................. (travel) to Luxor last year.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ cairo is the capital of Egypt

..............................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: **Our school uniform**

(uniform - white shirt - blue tie - winter - sweater )



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

**wear - sleeves - don't - shorts**

Hani : What do you like to 1) .................................... in summer?
Sami : I like to wear T-shirts and 2) .................................... .
Hani : Do you like T-shirts with long 3) .................................... ?
Sami : No, I 4) .................................... .

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

**galabeya - robe - pockets - traditional**

Adel : Hi, Ali. Can you tell me about some 1) ....... Egyptian clothes?
Ali : Sure. Many men wear the 2) .................................... .
Adel : What is the galabeya?
Ali : It's a long white 3) .................................... with long sleeves.
Adel : Are there any 4) .................................... in it?
Ali : Yes, but they're hidden.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اقرأ واختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. Mona likes wearing .................................... clothes.
   a) cotton, old b) cotton, new c) white, cotton d) cotton, green
2. I wear .................................... on my feet.
   a) sneakers b) jackets c) coats d) skirts
3. I bought new swimming .................................... to swim in the pool.
   a) shorts b) jacket c) umbrella d) coat
4. I went outside .................................... my friend.
   a) help b) to help c) helps d) helping
5. She .................................... to a clothes shop to buy a dress yesterday.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Activities on Review (1)



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hana's favorite fruit is ..............................
   a) mango  b) apple  c) banana  d) fig
2. We have a mango tree in our ..............................
   a) school  b) garden  c) park  d) farm
3. We make a lot of .............................. and dishes with mangoes.
   a) sports  b) poems  c) colors  d) drinks
4. Mango grow during the .............................. season.
   a) summer  b) winter  c) fall  d) spring

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. The .............................. makes shoes from leather.
   a) vet  b) shoemaker  c) dentist  d) doctor
2. We wear hats to .............................. ourselves from the sun.
   a) protect  b) sleep  c) swim  d) play
3. Farmers .............................. onions and potatoes.
   a) grow  b) draw  c) has  d) play
4. I'm so hot! Let's go to sit in the ..............................
   a) shade  b) desert  c) sun  d) moon

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

started - popular - star - hard - born

My favorite sports star is Mohamed Salah. He is a very ........(1)........ football player. He was ........(2)........ on 15th June in Gharbia. He is 1.75 tall. He ........(3)........ his early life to play for El Moqawloon in 2012. Then, he played for Chelsea and now he plays for Liverpool. He can speak English and Italian. He works ........(4)........ to achieve his goals. He is a fast and he scores a lot of goals.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food (ماكولات جاهزة غير صحية). isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football. Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Exercise is .................................................. for you.
   a) bad  b) good  c) harmful  d) sad
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..................................
   a) vegetables  b) junk food  c) fruit  d) water

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why should we eat fruit and vegetables? ..............................
4. How could you go to school to be healthy? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. playing - I'm -good -football -at -.
2. healthy -your - What's -food -favorite - ?

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't have .................................................. (some) mangoes.
2. Mona is bad at .................................................. (write) stories.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what's your favorite sport ..................................................

## 8 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونية من (30) كلمة.

Your name is Seif. Your email address is Seif@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Ramy and his email address is Ramy@yahoo.com

Guiding words: water pollution

(chemicals -rivers -organisms -crabs -homes -habitats)


Unit (4)
Looking after our world
الاعتناء بعالمنا
In this unit the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......
• listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة
• learn about Elephantine Island.
يتعلم عن جزيرة إلفنتين
• use sentences in the past continuous.
يستخدم جملًا في زمن الماضي المستمر
• learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
يتعلم ويتكلم عن السياحة البيئية في مصر
• learn how to say three consonants together.
يتعلم كيفية نطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معًا
• learn to correct spelling mistakes.
يتعلم تصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية
• write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.
يكتب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية في مصر

# Lesson (1) MY VISIT TO ELEPHANTINE ISLAND



## Landscapes مناظر طبيعية



coral reefs
شعاب مرجانية



mountain
جبل



island
جزيرة



forest
غابة



lake
بحيرة



waterfall
شلال



## Places in Egypt أماكن في مصر



Alexandria
مدينة الإسكندرية



Dahab
مدينة دهب



Nubian village
قرية نوبية

Help your child i...

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| English | Arabic | English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sunset | غروب الشمس | shape | شكل | town | مدينة صغيرة |
| decorated | مُزيّن - مُزَخْرف | rare | نادر | village | قرية |
| calendar | تقويم - (نتيجة حائط) | fantastic | رائع | tombs | مقابر |
| famous | مشهور | quiet | هادئ | bright | ساطع - لامع |
| postcard | بطاقة بريدية | museum | متحف | reign | عهد - فترة حكم |
| particularly | بطريقة خاصة | traffic | حركة المرور | felucca | فلوكة |

Elephantine Island جزيرة إلفنتين

Aswan Botanical Garden حديقة أسوان النباتية

Tombs of the Nobles مقابر النبلاء.



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| miss | يشتاق | missed |
| decorate | يُزيّن | decorated |
| travel | يسافر | traveled |
| wait | ينتظر | waited |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| understand | يفهم | understood |
| find | يجد | found |
| leave | يغادر | left |
| see | يرى | saw |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| travel by | يسافر بواسطة | in fact | في الحقيقة |
| full of | مليء بـ | look at | ينظر إلى |
| through the desert | عَبْر الصحراء | See you soon! | أراك قريبًا! |
| lots of | كثير من | go for a walk | يذهب للتمشية |



# Listen and read.



استمع واقرأ.



Aswan Botanical Garden



Temple of Philae

Hi Dalia!

How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see.

Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the shape!

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.

In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.

But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks.

مرحبًا داليا!

كيف حالك؟ افتقدك كثيرًا. أنا في جزيرة إلفنتين، إنها المكان الأكثر روعة. إنها في أسوان وهناك الكثير لرؤيته. بالأمس كنت مسافرًا بالقارب إلى الجزيرة مع أصدقائي. كنا نحاول فهم اسم إلفنتين. نعتقد أنه الشكل!

جزيرة إلفنتين هي أقدم مكان في أسوان. في الواقع كل الجزيرة مليئة بالتاريخ. بعد ذلك ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان. كنا ننظر إلى كل الأشياء القديمة من الجزيرة عندما وجدنا تقويمًا نادرًا جدًا من عهد تحتمس الثالث.

لكن الأمر لا يتعلق بالتاريخ فقط-إنه مكان جميل وهادئ حيث لا توجد حركة مرور لذلك فهي هادئة جدًا والهواء نقي. نستطيع الخروج للمشي لمسافات طويلة.

There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.

Can't wait to see you soon!

Nagwa

لا توجد غابات ولكن هناك الكثير من الأشجار، لذا فهي خضراء تمامًا. منظر غروب الشمس فيها رائع خاصة من الفلوكة. كنا نتمشى في إحدى القرى النوبية هذا الصباح ولديهم منازل جميلة مزينة. تناولنا الغذاء هناك ونحن ننظر إلى النيل. غدًا هو آخر صباح لنا هناك، لذلك قررنا أن نمشي لمقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء. سأكون حزينًا جدًا عند المغادرة.

أتشوق لرؤيتك قريبًا!

نجوى



Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك لن يستمع ويقرأ.

# Activities

...ص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eman visited Elephantine .................................... last month.
   a) Park  b) Island  c) Garden  d) Museum
2. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of ....................................
   a) Aswan  b) Giza  c) Cairo  d) Luxor
3. The Island is full of .................................... and amazing sights.
   a) lakes  b) temples  c) pyramids  d) history
4. You can visit the Aswan ....................................
   a) Temple  b) Museum  c) Dam  d) Farm

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Elephantine Island is full of ....................................
   a) history  b) art  c) science  d) English
2. We found a very rare calendar from the ............... of Thutmose III.
   a) room  b) reign  c) hour  d) row
3. I was traveling by .................................... to the island.
   a) boat  b) donkey  c) foot  d) metro
4. Aswan has a .................................... garden.
   a) ocean  b) boat  c) plant  d) botanical
5. There are a lot of coral .................................... in the sea.
   a) leaves  b) fish  c) beef  d) reefs
6. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a ............... on the Nile.
   a) shark  b) felucca  c) car  d) bus

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

walks - decorated - sunsets - traffic - sad

Elephantine Island is a beautiful and calm place. There's no .........(1).................. , so it's very quiet and the air is clean. We can go for long ..................(2).............. . There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The ..............(3).............. are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. There are Nubian villages. They have beautiful brightly ..............(4).............. houses.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. a beautiful - Aswan - is - calm - and - place - .

.............................................................................................................

2. by - traveling - I - boat - was - to - island - the - .

.............................................................................................................

3. went - Yesterday, - we - the - to - Aswan Museum - .

.............................................................................................................

4. Nagwa - have - Did - trip - a good - ?

.............................................................................................................

## 5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A visit to Elephantine Island

Guiding words:

( Elephantine Island - oldest - part - boat - shape )

.............................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ the elephantine island is a beautiful place.

.............................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Lesson (2) What were you doing?

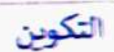
## The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

### Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.**

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لنعبر عن شيء حدث واستمر لفترة زمنية في الماضي.

e.g. She was sleeping at 6 am yesterday.

### Form 

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was | | + (verb + ing) |
| You / We / They / اسم جمع + were | | |

e.g. I was listening to the radio.

She was making her bed.

We were swimming in the sea.

They were playing football when Tom fell down.

### Spelling rules

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

١-عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف (e-) غير المنطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e-) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e-) منطوقاً لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

make ⟶ making take ⟶ taking be ⟶ being

٢-عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

swim ⟶ swimming sit ⟶ sitting stop ⟶ stopping

## Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not + (wasn't)
You / We / They / اسم جمع + were not + (weren't) + (verb + ing)

e.g. He wasn't listening to music.

We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

## (Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Was + (I - he - she - it - اسم مفرد) + (verb + ing)...?

Were + (you - we - they - اسم جمع) + (verb + ing)...?

e.g. Was he swimming in the lake? - Yes, he was.

Were they making a cake? - No, they weren't.

## Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W. + was + (I - he - she - it - اسم مفرد) + (verb + ing)...?

Q.W. + were + (you - we - they - اسم جمع) + (verb + ing)...?

e.g. What was he doing yesterday evening?

- He was watching TV.

e.g. What were you doing last Friday evening?

- I was visiting my uncle.

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | |
|---|---|
| Yesterday morning | Yesterday evening |
| at 5 am yesterday | at 7 pm yesterday |



Help your child use the past continuous.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الماضي المستمر.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I ........................ listening to the radio in the morning.
   a) are b) was c) were d) is
2. We were ........................ a cake yesterday morning.
   a) make b) makes c) made d) making
3. She ........................ swimming in the sea.
   a) was b) does c) were d) am
4. Was ........................ listening to music?
   a) you b) we c) they d) he
5. Were they ........................ at 6 am?
   a) sleeps b) slept c) sleeping d) sleep
6. The fish was ........................ in the sea.
   a) swims b) swimming c) swim d) swam
7. What were you ........................ at 3 pm yesterday?
   a) did b) do c) does d) doing
8. We were ........................ a great time in Alexandria.
   a) have b) had c) having d) has
9. At 8 am she ........................ playing at school.
   a) were b) was c) are d) be

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. ........................ (Was) you listening to music at 3 o'clock yesterday?
2. No, I ........................ (was) watching TV.
3. Were they ........................ (listen) to the teacher?
4. Where was Sami ........................ (go) yesterday evening?
5. My sister ........................ (were) playing tennis at 5 p.m.
6. They ........................ (are) studying English at 6 p.m yesterday.
7. The people were ........................ (walk) in the park.
8. I was ........................ (have) breakfast at 7 a.m last Monday.
9. ........................ (Were) the cat running?
10. She was ........................ (study) at 6 p.m yesterday.

Lesson (3)

# - ECO-TOURISM
# - PRONUNCIATION

## Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| coral reefs | الشعاب المرجانية | journey | رحلة |
| local people | السكان المحليون | wildlife | الحياة البرية |
| eco-tourism | السياحة البيئية | environment | بيئة |



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات اضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| important | هام/مهم | exciting | مثير |
| local | محلى | project | مشروع |
| eco-tourists | السياح المهتمون بالبيئة | tour guide | مرشد سياحي |
| culture | ثقافة | natural | طبيعي |
| monuments | آثار | job | وظيفة |
| historical | تاريخي | pollution | تلوث |
| UNESCO | منظمة اليونسكو | eco-village | قرية بيئية |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

*Regular verbs* افعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| create | يبتكر | created |
| preserve | يحافظ على | preserved |
| damage | يتلف | damaged |
| stay | يمكث - يقيم | stayed |
| travel | يسافر | traveled |
| cause | يتسبب | caused |

*Irregular verbs* افعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| drive | يقود | drove |
| pay | يدفع | paid |
| learn | يتعلم | learnt |
| come | يأتي | came |
| think | يعتقد | thought |
| tell | يخبر | told |

Help your child identify these words

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| travel by plane | يسافر بالطائرة | That sounds good! | هذا يبدو جيدًا! |
| look after | يعتني بـ | learn about | يتعلم عن |
| stay in | يقيم في | on foot | سيرًا على الأقدام |
| I see. | أفهمك. | pros and cons of | ميزات وعيوب |
| create from | ينتج من | give jobs | توفير فرص عمل |

**Tip!**

"Eco" means relating to the environment.

كلمة (Eco) تعني له علاقة بالبيئة.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Presenter** : Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. Tell us about eco-tourism, please. What is it?

مرحبًا، شريف. شكرًا لقدومك للتحدث معنا. شريف مرشد سياحي في الغردقة. أخبرنا عن السياحة البيئية من فضلك. ما هي؟

**Sherif** : Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

مرحبًا داليا. السياحة البيئية مثيرة للغاية. إنها السياحة التي تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.

**Presenter** : How does it help the environment and people?

كيف تساعد البيئة والناس؟

**Sherif** : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

لا يحب السياح المهتمون بالبيئة السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذي تسببه الطائرات. إنهم يسافرون بالقطار أو سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.

**Presenter** : I see. Where do they stay?

فهمت. أين يقيمون؟

**Sherif** : They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

إنهم لا يحبون الفنادق الكبيرة. ويقيمون في فنادق صغيرة محلية أو يدفعون للإقامة في منازل الناس.

**Presenter** : What do they do when they travel?

ماذا يفعلون عندما يسافرون؟

**Sherif** : They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

يحبون أن يتعلموا عن مشروعات الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

**Presenter** : Can you give me an example?

هل يمكن أن تعطيني مثالًا؟

**Sherif** : Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

بالطبع. هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض المشروعات الرائعة جدًا في البحر الأحمر، للحفاظ على الشعاب المرجانية والحيوانات البحرية. يأتي السياح إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون أين يمكنهم الغوص وكيف يتعاملون مع الحيوانات.

**Presenter** : That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

هذا يبدو رائعًا جدًا! شكرًا على وقتك يا شريف.



A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef.

سائح يغوص في البحر الأحمر بالقرب من الشعاب المرجانية.



Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village.

قرية واحة سيوه السياحية التابعة لليونسكو.

1. Eco-tourism is an exiting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people.

   السياحة البيئية فكرة مدهشة. إنها تعتني بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.

2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.

   لا يحب السياح المهتمون بالبيئة السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذي تسببه الطائرات.

3. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

   يقيم السياح المهتمون بالبيئة في فنادق محلية صغيرة أو يدفعون مقابل الإقامة في منازل الناس.

4. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

   يحب السياح المهتمون بالبيئة التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

5. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.

   هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض المشاريع الرائعة التي تعتني بالشعاب المرجانية.

6. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive.

   يأتي السائحون إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون السياحيون أين يمكنهم الغوص.

# Tourism
السياحة

## Good things
الأشياء الجيدة

1- It gives jobs for local people.

١- تقدم وظائف للسكان المحليين.

2- It helps people learn about new cultures.

٢- تساعد الناس أن يتعلموا عن ثقافات جديدة.

## Bad things
الأشياء السيئة

1- It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.

١- تُحدث الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون الناتج عن الرحلات الجوية.

2- It damages the natural environment.

٢- تضر بالبيئة الطبيعية.

3- It damages historical places or monuments.

٣- تضر بالأماكن التاريخية أو الآثار.

# Eco-tourism
السياحة البيئية

## Pros
إيجابيات

1- It helps the environment.

١- تساعد البيئة.

2- It helps to protect the wildlife.

٢- تساعد في حماية الحياة البرية.

3- It doesn't cause much pollution.

٣- لا تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

## Cons
سلبيات

1- It's not as comfortable as normal tourism,.

١- ليست مريحة كالسياحة العادية.

2- There are limited places you can reach without taking a plane.

٢- توجد أماكن محدودة يمكنك الوصول إليها بدون طائرة.

# PRONUNCIATION

## Three consonant clusters

ثلاثة أصوات ساكنة متتالية

Some words are hard to say because there are three consonants together.

بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق وذلك لوجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها.

استمع وردد.

### Listen and repeat.

**scr-**

| screen | scream | screw | scratch |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| شاشة | يصرخ | مسمار (قلاووظ) | يخربش- يخدش |

**str-**

| street | strong | strawberry | string |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| شارع | قوي | فراولة | خيط |

**thr-**

| throat | throw | three | throne |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| حلق - حنجرة | يرمي | ثلاثة | العرش |

### Listening script ?

The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

## Words that can be misspelled

| Correct spelling | The misspelled | Correct spelling | The misspelled |
|---|---|---|---|
| milk | milc | lake | lakke |
| chocolate | chokolate | mountain | mountaine |
| ice skating | ise skating | sneakers | sneekers |

### 1 Look and complete the words. انظر وأكمل الكلمات.



_ _ _een



_ _ _ _ing



_ _ _awberry



_ _ _one

### 2 Look and check (✓) the correct words. انظر وضع (✓) أمام الكلمة الصحيحة.



ise skating ( )
ice skating ( )



lakke ( )
lake ( )



cake ( )
cacke ( )



chokolate ( )
chocolate ( )



sneakers ( )
sneekers ( )



milk ( )
milc ( )

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists like to travel by ........................................

a) planes  b) rockets  c) bikes  d) cars

2. Eco-tourists pay to stay in ........................................

a) people's houses  b) zoos  c) schools  d) villages

3. Eco-tourists like to learn about .................... wildlife projects.

a) local  b) twon  c) city  d) world

4. Tourism gives .................................... for local people.

a) colors  b) food  c) jobs  d) sports

5. Tourism helps people learn .................................... new cultures.

a) at  b) in  c) by  d) about

6. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the ........ that planes cause.

a) jobs  b) solution  c) pollution  d) lotion

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

Egypt - cultures - places - Eco-tourists - coral reefs

Eco-tourism looks after the environment. ..........(1).......... like to stay in small local hotels or in people's houses. In Egypt, they look after the ..........(2).......... . Tourists love to learn about local ..........(3).......... . There are many places in ..........(4).......... that eco-tourists can visit.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Tourism can be helpful to many countries. It gives jobs for local people, and it can help people to learn about new cultures. Sometimes, tourism can be bad for many countries. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places, or monuments. Tourism can also create too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Many people are trying eco-tourism, because it looks after the environment and the people.

**A) Choose the correct word.**

1. The main idea of the text is ..................................................
   a) tourism b) sports c) food d) drinks
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..........................................
   a) nature b) eco-tourism c) environment d) plane

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why can tourism be helpful to many countries? ........................
4. How can tourism create too much carbon dioxide? ......................

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. looks - after - Eco-tourism - environment - the - .
   ..................................................................................................
2. to - many - very - is - Tourism - important - countries - .
   ..................................................................................................
3. think - do - What - you - eco-tourism - of - ?
   ..................................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ eco-tourism is an exciting idea in egypt.
..................................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Eco-tourism

(important - helps - jobs - hotels)

# Lessons (4&5)

# TABA: MY FAVORITE ECO-RESORT



## Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| camp | معسكر | eco-holiday | إجازة / عطلة بيئية |
| hiking | التنزه - التجول (على الأقدام) | eco - lodges | مساكن صديقة للبيئة / نزل (بيئية) |
| fascinating | ساحر - خلاب | eco-friendly | صديق للبيئة |
| structure | بناء - مبنى | eco-resort | منتجع سياحي بيئي |



## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| culture | ثقافة | excellent | ممتاز |
| valley | وادي | fantastic = wonderful | رائع |
| Nubian ibex | تيس الجبل النوبي (وَعْل) | rare | نادر |
| flyer | نشرة إعلانية | sub-heading | عنوان فرعي |
| main heading | عنوان رئيسي | camping | التخييم - إقامة مخيمات |
| hut | كوخ | Nawamis village | قرية نواميس |



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| dive | يغوص | dived | hike | يتمشى - يتجول | hiked |
| talk | يتكلم | talked | enjoy | يستمتع بـ | enjoyed |



## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| an example of | مثال لـ | a part of | جزء من |
| good for | مفيد لـ / جيد لـ | way of life | طريقة حياة |
| take part in | يشارك في | stay in | يقيم في |

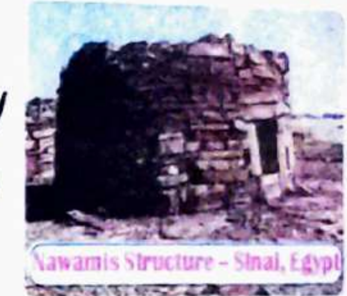
# Eco-tourism in Egypt

السياحة البيئية في مصر


Camp in Sinai, Egypt

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

تعتبر طابا مثالًا ممتازًا لجزء من مصر حيث تعمل فيه السياحة البيئية جيدًا. يمكنك أن تجد هناك الوديان والجبال والصحراء والبحر.


Nawamis Structure – Sinai, Egypt

You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.

يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا، مثل الوعل النوبي والطيور النادرة. وهذا جيدٌ جدًا للسياح المهتمين بالبيئة لأنه يمكّنهم من الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة.

The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

السكان المحليون ودودون جدًا. لذلك يستطيع السياح المهتمون بالبيئة تناول وجبة معهم أو التحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating! Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.
You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير في طابا، توجد قرية النواميس، وهي قرية ذات مباني مستديرة قديمة جدًا. إنها مباني رائعة. يمكن للسياح المهتمون بالبيئة في طابا الاستمتاع برياضة الغطس، و التنزه، والتخييم، ويمكنهم الإقامة في معسكرات ونُزل بيئية. يمكنك أن تجد كل شيء في طابا لقضاء إجازة رائعة!

**Tip!:**
An eco-destination is a place you are going to which is good for the environment. This is because people there look after the environment.

وجهة السفر البيئية هي مكان تذهب إليه ويكون مفيد للبيئة، لأن الناس هناك يعتنون بالبيئة.

# Project

## Look and read.

انظر واقرا.

- Look at the flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba.

انظر إلى النشرة الإعلانية التي تقوم بالدعايا لقضاء عطلة بيئية في طابا.

Main heading

sub-heading

**Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt**

***Meet the local people***

Talk to them about their way of life.

تحدث معهم عن طريقتهم في الحياة.



***Enjoy the wildlife***

Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.



تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر! لدينا اسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.

***Enjoy the local culture***

Visit Nawamis, a 6,000- year-old village.

قُم بزيارة قرية النواميس، ذات ٦٠٠٠ عامًا.



photos



***Stay in our comfortable huts***

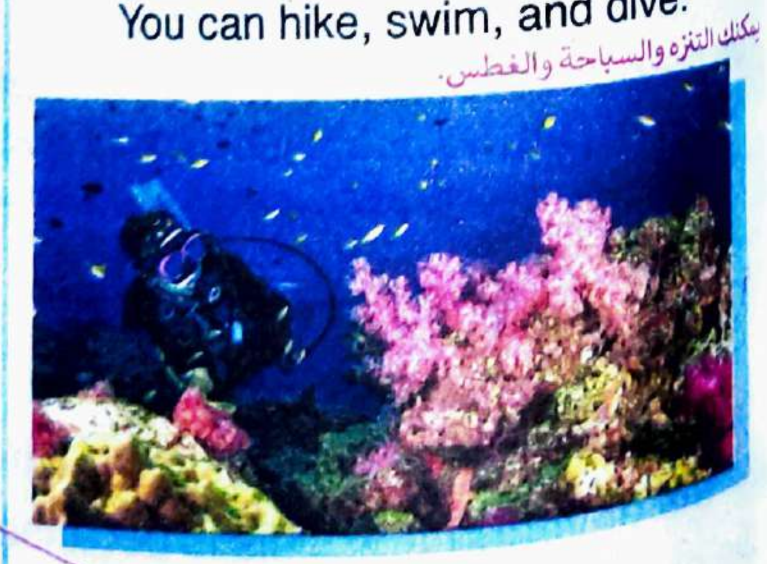
They are cool and eco-friendly

إنها رائعة وصديقة للبيئة.

***Take part in exciting activities***

You can hike, swim, and dive.

يمكنك التنزه والسباحة والغطس.



sentences

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

excellent - Taba - Nubian - environment - valleys

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find ..........(1).......... , mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in ..........(2).......... , like the ..........(3).......... ibex, and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the ..........(4).......... .

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco- .......................... .
   a) mountains b) lodges c) valleys d) tombs
2. Local people in Taba are .......................... .
   a) bad b) unkind c) sad d) friendly
3. Nawamis .......................... is in Taba.
   a) village b) lake c) city d) town
4. There are .......................... fish, birds, and animals in Taba.
   a) dirty b) ugly c) wonderful d) bad

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. people - local - The - friendly - are - very - .
..........................................................................
2. stay - camps - Tourists - in - can - .
..........................................................................
3. enjoy - You - Taba - can - in - wildlife - the - .
..........................................................................
4. hike - Taba - You - in - can - .
..........................................................................

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating! Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

### A) Choose the correct word.

1. Nawamis village has very .................................................... buildings.
   a) modern  b) bad  c) new  d) old
2. Taba is a part of ....................................................................
   a) France  b) China  c) England  d) Egypt

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

...................................................................................................

4. What can eco-tourists enjoy in Taba?

...................................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt

...................................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Taba

Guiding words:

( part - mountains - diving )

...................................................................................................

...................................................................................................

# Review on Unit (4)


botanical garden


coral reefs


mountains


island

lake


waterfall



hotel

river


forest



dive


tourists


felucca

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Looking after our world

Phonics

Language

Three consonant clusters


str-


strawberry

string


street


strong


scr-

screw

scream


scratch

screen

thr-

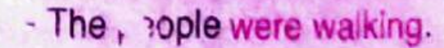

throne

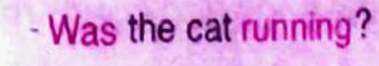
throat

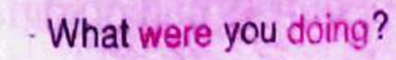

throw


three

- The fox was sleeping.


- The people were walking.
- He wasn't walking down the road.


- Was the cat running?


- What were you doing?
- I was reading a story.




**Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

## *My visit to Elephantine Island*

Yesterday, I was traveling to Elephantine island by boat with my family. We were trying to understand the Elephantine name! Elephantine Island is the most fantastic place in Aswan. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. You can do lots of things there.

## *Eco-tourism*

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and gives jobs for local people. Tourists stay in small, local hotels. Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife and local culture. We should support eco-tourism.

## *Pros and cons of eco-tourism*

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It helps to protect the wildlife. It looks after the environment. It helps local people. But eco-tourism isn't as comfortable as normal tourism.

## *Taba*

Taba is good for eco-tourism. We can find valleys, desert and the sea there. Eco-tourists can do different activities there. They can enjoy hiking and diving. They can stay in eco-lodges. In Taba, local people are very friendly.

# Dictation on Unit (4)

## Lesson (1)

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ............................ | غابة |
| ............................ | بحيرة |
| ............................ | غروب الشمس |
| ............................ | مقابر |
| ............................ | الشعاب المرجانية |

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ............................ | جزيرة |
| ............................ | نيل |
| ............................ | حركة المرور |
| ............................ | فلوكة |
| ............................ | شلال |

## Lesson (3)

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ............................ | السياحة البيئية |
| ............................ | الحياة البرية |
| ............................ | يغطس |
| ............................ | فراولة |
| ............................ | العرش |
| ............................ | مسمار (قلاووظ) |
| ............................ | قوي |
| ............................ | يرمي / يُلقي |

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ............................ | البيئة |
| ............................ | فندق |
| ............................ | السياح المهتمون بالبيئة |
| ............................ | محيط |
| ............................ | حلق - حنجرة |
| ............................ | شاشة |
| ............................ | يصرخ |
| ............................ | شارع |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ............................ | مفيد لـ |
| ............................ | يقيم في |
| ............................ | منتجع بيئي |
| ............................ | ساحر - خلاب |
| ............................ | نادر |
| ............................ | كوخ |
| ............................ | وادي |
| ............................ | ثقافة |
| ............................ | يغوص |

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ............................ | نزل بيئية |
| ............................ | وادى |
| ............................ | نشرة إعلانية |
| ............................ | ممتاز |
| ............................ | التنزة - التجول (على الأقدام) |
| ............................ | رحلة بيئية |
| ............................ | صديق للبيئة |
| ............................ | التخييم |
| ............................ | رائع |

Help your child dictate these wor

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

# A tivities on Unit (4)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite place in .................................... is the Elephantine Island.
   a) China b) Japan c) USA d) Egypt
2. It's the most .................................................................... place.
   a) fantastic b) bad c) dirty d) far
3. It's a very beautiful and ........................................................ place.
   a) noisy b) busy c) calm d) ugly
4. The ............................................................ is full of history.
   a) lake b) sea c) river d) Island

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They .................................... their class yesterday. It's very nice.
   a) found b) left c) decorated d) ate
2. He likes history. He likes to study ........................................ things.
   a) old b) modern c) big d) new
3. Eco-tourism helps to protect the ....................................................
   a) wildlife b) hospitals c) schools d) parks
4. I like fruit, I want to eat a ........................................................
   a) string b) screw c) strawberry d) screen

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

air - traffic - green - calm - Aswan

There are a lot of wonderful places in Egypt. ..........(1).......... is one of these places. Aswan is a beautiful and ..........(2).......... place. There isn't much ..........(3).........., so it's quiet and the ..........(4).......... is clean. There are no forests but there are lots of trees so it's quite green.


Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Taba is my favorite eco-resort. You can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. Eco-tourists can enjoy diving, hiking and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

### A) Choose the correct word.

1. You can find ................................................ in Taba.
   a) lakes b) hills c) valleys d) rivers
2. The local people are very ................................................
   a) cruel b) unkind c) bad d) friendly

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What activities can eco-tourists enjoy doing in Taba? ..................
4. Where can eco-tourists stay in Taba? ..................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. were - TV - We - watching - .

................................................................................

2. think - What - do - you - of - eco-tourism - ?

................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I was ................................................ (swim) at 5 p.m yesterday.
2. We ................................................ (wasn't) making cakes.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ Was mona watching TV

................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Eco-tourism

( important - new culture - comfortable )

Help your child d...

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

Island - boat - How - Where - Do

Hend : Hello Rana! Where were you last Sunday?
Rana : Hi Hend! I was on Elephantine 1) ....................
Hend : 2) .................... is Elephantine Island located?
Rana : It's in Aswan.
Hend : 3) .................... did you get there?
Rana : I went there by 4) .................... .

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

hotels - pollution - eco-tourists - wildlife - eco-tourism

Ahmed : What do you think of eco-tourism?
Adam : Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the 1) .... and helps local people.
Ahmed : Do 2) .................... like to travel by plane?
Adam : No. Because of the 3) .................... that planes cause.
Ahmed : Where do eco-tourists stay in?
Adam : They stay in small, local 4) .. or pay to stay in people's houses.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hend was .................... at 6 pm yesterday.
   a) cook b) cooks c) cooked d) cooking
2. .................... he riding a bike?
   a) Does b) Did c) Was d) Has
3. Eco-tourists stay in small, local .................... .
   a) caves b) schools c) hotels d) parks
4. .................... helps people learn about new cultures.
   a) Farming b) Tourism c) Diving d) Driving
5. Tourists come to the Red Sea to .................... .
   a) eat b) dive c) run d) leave

Unit (5)

# Jobs we do

# وظائف نقوم بها

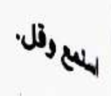


## In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف.....

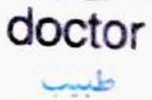
- listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الوظائف في مصر القديمة.
- understand ecosystems.
  يفهم الأنظمة البيئية.
- practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
  يتدرب على استخدام المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين.
- practice using must to talk about obligation.
  يتدرب على استخدام must للتحدث عن الإلزام
- understand and discuss a traditional tale.
  يفهم ويناقش حكاية تقليدية.
- learn to say words with diphthongs.
  يتعلم نطق كلمات بها أصوات مزدوجة.
- understand pie charts.
  يفهم الرسم البياني الدائري.
- write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  يكتب عن مزايا وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
- make a poster about teamwork.
  يقوم بعمل ملصق عن العمل الجماعي.

## Listen and say.

















fisherman
صياد سمك

doctor
طبيب

craftsman
حِرَفي

Jobs
وظائف

baker
خباز

scribe
كاتب

farmer
مزارع (فلاح)

teacher
مدرس - مُعلم

## Extra vocabulary كلمات اضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| hieroglyphs | الكتابة الهيروغليفية | jewelry | مجوهرات | successful | ناجح |
| sculptures | منحوتات | trader | تاجر | list | قائمة |
| grains | حبوب - غلال | flax = linen | كتان | clay | صلصال |
| temple | معبد | wheat | قمح | gold | ذهب |
| medical school | مدرسة الطب | corn | ذرة | row | صف |
| Ancient Egypt | مصر القديمة | pharaohs | فراعنة | column | عمود |
| Ancient Egyptians | المصريون القدماء | famous | مشهور | sign | لافتة - علامة |
| pots | أواني | queen | ملكة | medicine | دواء |
| female ruler | الملكة الحاكمة | records | سجلات | wood | خشب |
| expensive | غالي الثمن | paintings | لوحات مرسومة | fields | حقول |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| weave | ينسج | weaved |
| plant | يزرع | planted |
| clean | ينظف | cleaned |
| bake | يخبز | baked |
| use | يستخدم | used |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| know | يعرف | knew |
| keep | يحفظ | kept |
| spend | يقضي | spent |
| buy | يشتري | bought |
| sell | يبيع | sold |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| work hard | يعمل بجد | at home | بالمنزل |
| easy to learn | سهل التعلم | consist of | يتكون من |
| write down | يُدوّن | look after | يعتنى بـ |
| take care of | يهتم بـ | important for | هام لـ |
| work outside | يعمل بالخارج | travel up and down the Nile | يبحر في النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا |

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

### Jobs in Ancient Egypt



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, 1473-1458 BCE

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers.

عمل الناس في مصر القديمة بجد. كان كل شخص لديه وظيفة. استطاعوا أن يعملوا كصيادين وخبازين ...
معظم الناس عملوا كمزارعين.

Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

عمل الفلاحون في الحقول التي كانت بالقرب من بيوتهم وزرعوا المحاصيل، وعادة ما تكون حبوب ...
والكتان، كما زرعوا الخضروات والفاكهة أيضًا.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

وكان الحرفيون من المصريين القدماء ماهرين جدًا أيضًا. صنعوا لوحات جميلة ومجوهرات ذهبية ومنحوتات جميلة.
واعتادوا نسج ملابس جميلة وصنع أواني طهي ملونة. عمل [illegible] من الناس ككتبة. وكان الكتبة يعرفون كيفية القراءة
والكتابة جيدًا. لم تكن الكتابة المصرية سهلة التعلم. وقضى الكتبة سنوات عديدة في تعلم الكتابة الهيروغليفية وكان هذا
مكلفًا جدًا.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

كانت نساء قدماء المصريين يعملن في البيت وكان بإمكانهن العمل بالخارج أيضا. كان النساء يقمن بطهي الوجبات وتنظيف
المنزل والاعتناء بأطفالهن. وكان بإمكان النساء نسج السلال وعمل الخبز وصناعة الصنادل. وكن يقمن ببيعهم في السوق
أيضا. واستطعن حتى أن يصبحوا فراعنة. وكانت حتشبسوت إحدى الملكات المشهورة في مصر القديمة.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

كان الجميع في مصر القديمة يعرفون أن العمل مهم للحياة لذلك كان القدماء المصريون ناجحين جدًا!!



# Words with their description.

كلمات مع وصفها.

People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

أصحاب هذه الوظيفة كانوا مهمين في مصر القديمة. استطاعوا تدوين كل شئ. احتفظوا بالسجلات وقوائم للأشياء الهامة.

scribe
كاتب



People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

الناس الذين قاموا بهذه الوظيفة سافروا عبر النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا. اشتروا وباعوا الأشياء مثل الذهب والخشب والكتان والحبوب.

trader
تاجر



If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

إذا كنت جيد في عمل الأشياء فتلك الوظيفة ستكون جيدة لك. فأصحاب هذه الوظيفة صنعوا أشياء من الصلصال والخشب والذهب.

craftsman
حِرَفِي



A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

نظام الكتابة الذي كان يتكون من حوالى علامة مكتوبة في صفوف وأعمدة. استخدمها الناس في مصر القديمة.

hieroglyphs
الهيروغليفية



Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

استطاع كلًا من الرجال والنساء القيام بهذه الوظيفة أيضًا. كان يجب أن تذهب إلى مدرسة الطب لتمارس هذه الوظيفة. كان عليك أن تعتني بالناس المرضى وأن تقوم بعمل الأدوية.

doctor
طبيب - طبيبة

Help your child

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Most people worked as ……………………
   a) farmers b) scribes c) traders d) doctors
2. Farmers worked in ……………………
   a) homes b) fields c) hospitals d) seas
3. Farmers planted crops, usually ………… like wheat, corn and flax.
   a) vegetables b) fruits c) grains d) wood
4. …………………… could write everything down.
   a) Doctors b) Craftsmen c) Farmers d) Scribes

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pots - weave - scribes - well - gold

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good. They made beautiful paintings, and beautiful 1)………… jewelery. They used to 2)………… beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking 3)…………. Fewer people worked as 4)………….
Scribes knew how to read and write well.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is a ……………………. He works in a hospital.
   a) teacher b) doctor c) baker d) scribe
2. A ……… is a person who keeps records and lists for important things.
   a) scribe b) trader c) teacher d) fisherman
3. …………………… is a system of writing.
   a) Trade b) Farming c) Hieroglyphs d) Fishing
4. …………………… buy and sell things.
   a) Vets b) Craftsmen c) Doctors d) Traders
5. Women in Ancient Egypt worked …………………… home.
   a) in b) at c) by d) on

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. how - Scribes - read - to - knew - well - write - and - .

2. fruit - plant - Farmers - could - vegetables - and - .

3. were - Ancient - successful - very - Egyptians - .

4. become - could - Women - pharaohs - .

## 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "Ancient" means .................................

a) new  b) far  c) old  d) modern

2. Farmers worked in .................................

a) fields  b) schools  c) restaurants  d) hospitals

B) Answer the following questions.

1. What crops did farmers grow? .................................

2. Did everyone have a job in Ancient Egypt? .................................

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

what jobs did people in Ancient Egypt do

# Ecosystems


a desert ecosystem
النظام البيئي الصحراوي


a freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئي لمياه العذبة


a rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئي لبرك المياه الصخرية


a marine ecosystem
النظام البيئي البحري

## Living things
كائنات حية


crab
سرطان البحر / كابوريا


insect
حشرة


tree
شجرة


fish
سمكة

seaweed
نبات بحرية

## Non-living things
كائنات غير حية

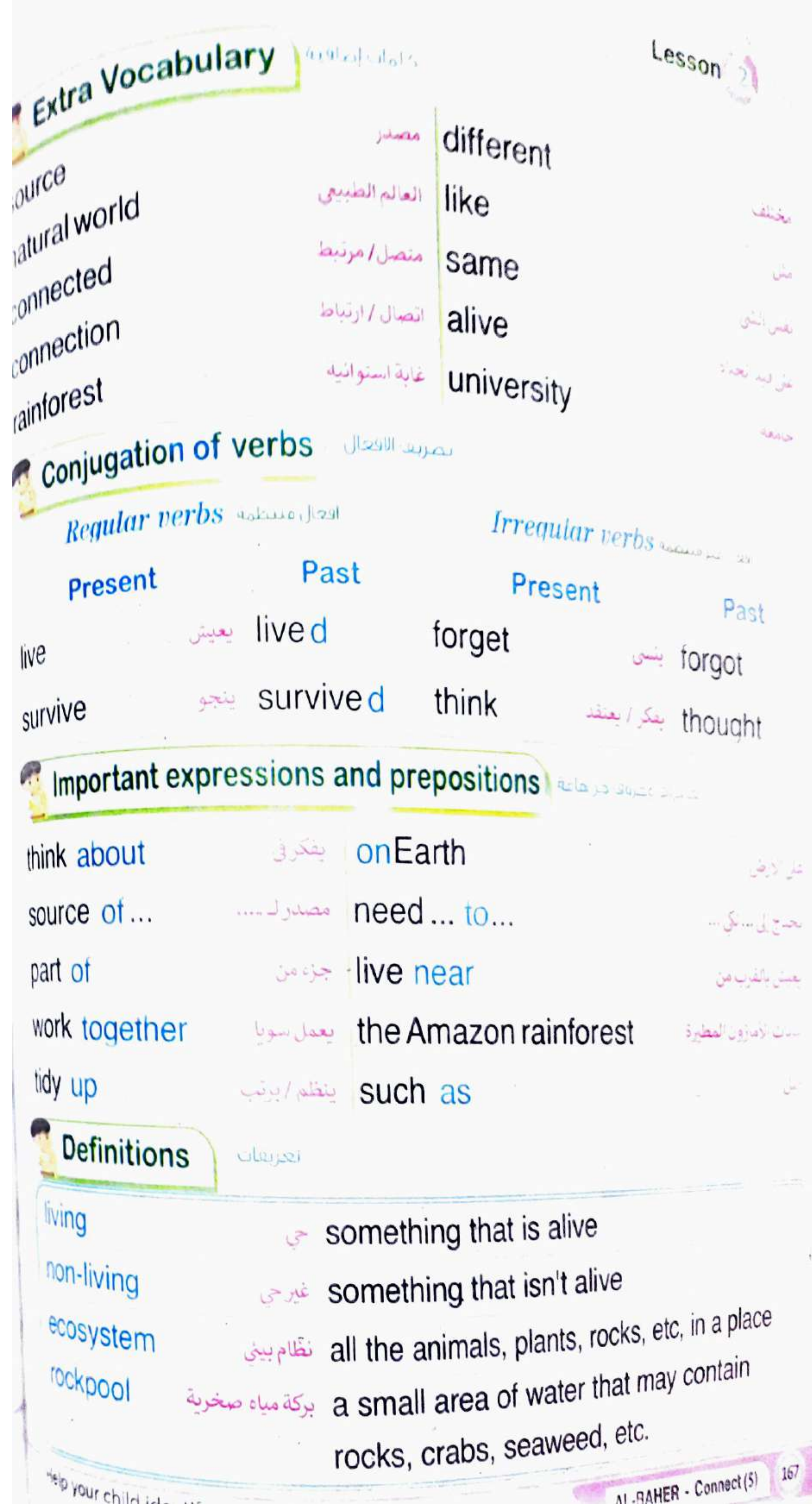

rocks
صخور


sunlight
ضوء الشمس


sand
رمال


water
مياه

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



## Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| source | مصدر | different | مختلف |
| natural world | العالم الطبيعي | like | مثل |
| connected | متصل / مرتبط | same | نفس الشئ |
| connection | اتصال / ارتباط | alive | على قيد الحياة |
| rainforest | غابة استوائية | university | جامعة |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| live | يعيش | lived |
| survive | ينجو | survived |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| forget | ينسى | forgot |
| think | يفكر / يعتقد | thought |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| think about | يفكر في | on Earth | على الأرض |
| source of ... | مصدر لـ .... | need ... to... | يحتاج إلى ... لكي ... |
| part of | جزء من | live near | يعيش بالقرب من |
| work together | يعمل سويا | the Amazon rainforest | غابات الأمازون المطيرة |
| tidy up | ينظم / يرتب | such as | مثل |

## Definitions تعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| living | حي | something that is alive |
| non-living | غير حي | something that isn't alive |
| ecosystem | نظام بيئي | all the animals, plants, rocks, etc, in a place |
| rockpool | بركة مياه صخرية | a small area of water that may contain rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc. |

Help your child ide...

**Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

# What is an ecosystem? ما هو النظام البيئي؟



a marine ecosystem



a freshwater ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

a desert ecosystem



a rockpool ecosystem



كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي مترابط. هذا الترابط بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية يسمى النظام البيئي. من الممكن أن تكون الأنظمة البيئية صغيرة مثل بركة مياه صخرية أو كبيرة جدًا مثل غابة الأمازون المطيرة. الكائنات الحية في النظام البيئي للبرك الصخرية هي الأسماك وسرطان البحر و الأعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمال وضوء الشمس. تعمل هذه الأشياء معًا لتكوّن نظامًا بيئيًا. هناك الكثير من الأنظمة البيئية المختلفة على الأرض.

**Write the words in the correct group.**

crab - rock - insect - sand - fish - water

| Living things | Non-living things |
| --- | --- |
| .................................... | .................................... |
| .................................... | .................................... |
| .................................... | .................................... |

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

seaweed - rockpool - water - connection - ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an 1)............................ Ecosystems can be small, like a 2)........................................................, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and 3)............................. The non-living things are rocks, 4)............................, sand, and sunlight.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Everything in the natural world is ................................................
   a) connected b) connect c) disconnected d) remote
2. Trees and animals are ................................................ things.
   a) non-living b) living c) flying d) dead
3. "Living" is something that is ................................................
   a) dead b) died c) endangered d) alive
4. The water in the Nile is ................................................
   a) dangerous b) saltwater c) sweet water d) freshwater
5. ................................................ are non-living things.
   a) Trees b) Rocks c) Children d) Birds

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. the same - all - Are - ecosystems - ?
   ................................................
2. is - the natural - in - world - Everything - connected - .
   ................................................
3. to - do - What - need - you - survive - ?
   ................................................

Help y...

# The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

## Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر

e.g. I eat fruit. e.g. We catch a bus.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + inf. + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He eats fruit. - Ali catches a bus. - She flies a plane.

## Spelling rules

عندما يكون الفاعل (اسم مفرد He, She, It):

- نضيف (es) للفعل إذا انتهى بـ (o, sh, ch, x, ss).

go → goes watch → watches

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies).

study → studies fly → flies

- أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف متحرك نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays

## words الكلمات الدالة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ...ays | دائمًا | usually | عادةً | often | غالبًا |
| ...metimes | أحيانًا | every (day, ....) | كل (يوم،..) | never | أبدًا |

...ina always plays basketball.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mrs Soha .................................................... in a school.
   a) work b) working c) works d) to work
2. We .................................................... computer games at the weekend.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) to play
3. I .................................................... yogurt and cheese for breakfast.
   a) eats b) to eat c) eat d) eating
4. Hany .................................................... the bus to Cairo every morning.
   a) to catch b) catch c) catches d) catching
5. I .................................................... fruit.
   a) eat b) eats c) to eat d) eating
6. The manager .................................................... the restaurant every day.
   a) open b) opening c) opens d) to open
7. Mona .................................................... the vegetables with a sharp knife.
   a) to cut b) cutting c) cut d) cuts
8. Hamza .................................................... a plane.
   a) flies b) to fly c) fly d) flying
9. I .................................................... to work at 10 am every day.
   a) drive b) drives c) to drive d) driving
10. My boss .................................................... me to prepare the vegetables.
    a) ask b) to ask c) asks d) asking

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I .................................................. (eats) fruit.
2. Heba .................................................. (drive) to work every day.
3. We .................................................. (plays) tennis after school.
4. Ali .................................................. (want) to be a teacher.
5. Sami .................................................. (fly) a plane.
6. Mona .................................................. (catch) the bus in the morning.
7. They .................................................. (cooks) lots of delicious food.
8. Walid .................................................. (look) after hippos.
9. Nadim .................................................. (tidy) up the kitchen.
10. Nahla .................................................. (do) her homework.

## Must / Mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

Subject فاعل + must + inf. المصدر

نستخدم (must + inf) للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء.

e.g. I must do my homework.

Subject فاعل + mustn't + inf. المصدر

نستخدم (mustn't + inf) للتعبير عن المنع والحظر.

e.g. You mustn't walk on the grass.

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!





Help your child use must / mustn't for obligation.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم must / mustn't للتعبير عن الإلزام.

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I ............................................ do my English homework.
   a) must b) mustn't c) am d) is
2. You ............................................ walk on the grass.
   a) aren't b) haven't c) must d) mustn't
3. Sara ............................................ wake her sick sister up.
   a) don't b) must c) mustn't d) aren't
4. We ............................................ look after the environment.
   a) have b) must c) mustn't d) aren't
5. I ............................................ be quiet in the library.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
6. You must ............................................ your hands.
   a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed
7. We mustn't ............................................ left.
   a) turns b) turning c) turned d) turn
8. He ............................................ use his cell phone in the class.
   a) should b) must be c) must d) mustn't
9. You mustn't ............................................ your bike here.
   a) ride b) riding c) rode d) rides
10. Ali ............................................ tidy up his room. - It's messy.
    a) must b) shouldn't c) hasn't d) mustn't

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I must ............................................ (does) my homework.
2. You mustn't ............................................ (talks) in the library.
3. Walid must ............................................ (giving) hippos a bath.
4. Mona is ill. She ............................................ (mustn't) see the doctor.
5. They ............................................ (must) forget their books at school.
6. You must ............................................ (helped) your mother.
7. I ............................................ (must) smoke in the hospital.
8. We must ............................................ (looks) after hippos.

# Lesson (3) THE ANT AND THE GRASSHOPPER

## Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ant | نملة | fence | سور / سياج | boring | ممل |
| grasshopper | جرادة - جندب | buzz | يطن / أزيز (صوت النحل) | strange | غريب |
| bee | نحلة | relaxing | مسترخي | suddenly | فجأة |

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| butterfly | فراشة | fall | الخريف | conversation | محادثة |
| insect | حشرة | winter | الشتاء | animal keeper | حارس حيوانات |
| lazy | كسول | spring | الربيع | police officer | ضابط شرطة |
| future | المستقبل | summer | الصيف | surprised | مندهش |
| crops | محاصيل | dentist | طبيب الأسنان | lovely | جميل - رائع |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة | *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| rest | يرتاح | rested | shine | تشرق | shone |
| harvest | يحصد | harvested | eat | يأكل | ate |
| hop | ينط - يقفز | hopped | fly | يطير | flew |
| carry on | يواصل - يستمر | carried on | spend | يقضي | spent |
| prefer | يفضل | preferred | understand | يفهم | understood |
| buzz | يطن | buzzed | teach | يُعلم | taught |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| full of | مليئة - مملوؤة بـ | work hard | يعمل بجد |
| rest against | يستريح مستنداً على | have fun | يمرح |

knock on
look over
carry on

come in يستمر في

يدخل

استمع واقرأ.

## Listen and read.

# The ant and the grasshopper النملة والجرادة



It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are **buzzing** and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.

إنه الربيع والشمس مشرقة. و الحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور لتأكل منها الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. يطن النحل وتطير الفراشات في الشمس. ومع ذلك يعمل النمل بجد.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time **relaxing**. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden **fence**.



يقضي الجراد الكسول معظم وقته في الاسترخاء. فهو لا يحب أن يعمل. اليوم يستريح متكئًا على شجرة ويسمع صوتًا غريبًا. ويريد أن يعرف ما هذا الصوت. وينظر من فوق سور الحديقة.



"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper. "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?"
"Thank you, but I need to **carry on** with my work," says the ant.

الجراد: ماذا تفعلين أيتها النملة؟
النملة: أنا أعمل.
الجراد: لكنه يوم جميل، لم لا تتوقفين عن العمل ويمكننا أن نمرح؟
النملة: شكرًا لك، لكنني بحاجة إلى مواصلة عملي.

"But working is so boring," replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away.



الجراد: لكن العمل مُمّل.
النملة: ربما، لكنه شيء يجب علينا جميعًا القيام به. يجب أن نفكر في المستقبل وليس اليوم فقط.
لم يفهم الجراد لذا قفز بعيدًا.

Soon, it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all her crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until she has harvested all the food and taken it inside for the winter.



وسريعًا حل فصل الخريف. لقد عملت النملة بجد ولمت جميع محاصيلها بشكل جيد. لم تتوقف النملة عن العمل حتى حصدت كل الطعام وأخذته للداخل من أجل الشتاء.

Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door."I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."



وسريعًا حلّ فصل الشتاء والطقس بارد جدًا. والجراد جائع وليس لديه أي طعام ولا يمكنه العثور عليه. و فجأة تذكر المحادثة التي أجراها مع النملة. وقام بطرق باب النملة وقال لها " أنا أفهمك الآن أيتها النملة. أنت عملتي والآن لديك طعام. وأنا لم أعمل والآن أنا جائع". قالت له النملة " تفضل بالدخول. نعم من الجيد أن تمرح، ولكن من المهم جدًا أيضًا أن تعمل بجد".

## Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. Why is the grasshopper surprised?
2. What do the ant and the grasshopper teach us?
3. Will the grasshopper work hard nex

# PRONUNCIATI

## Diphthongs (مدغمة

ان صوتًا واحدًا:

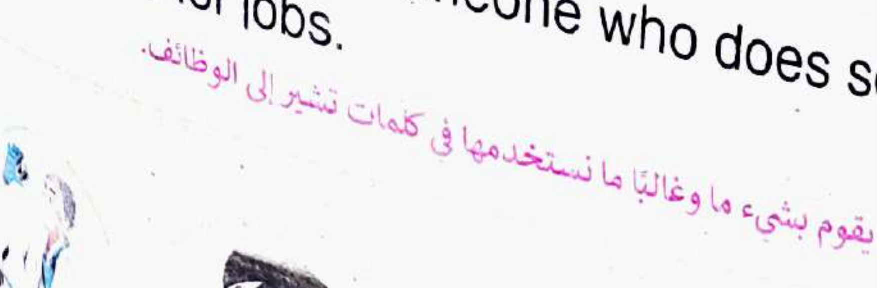
Listen and repeat.

| /aʊ/ | | /aɪ/ | |
|---|---|---|---|
| down | إلى أسفل / أدنى | why | لماذا |
| town | مدينة | try | يحاول |
| brown | لون بني | eye | عين |
| mouse | فأر | buy | يشتري |
| loud | صاخب | light | فاتح - ضوء |

## Suffix (-ist)

The suffix means someone who does s
use it in words for jobs.

يقوم بشيء ما وغالبًا ما نستخدمها في كلمات تشير إلى الوظائف.



# Pie charts المخططات الدائرية



This is a pie.



This is a pie chart.

A pie chart is a way of showing information.

•• Look at the chart.

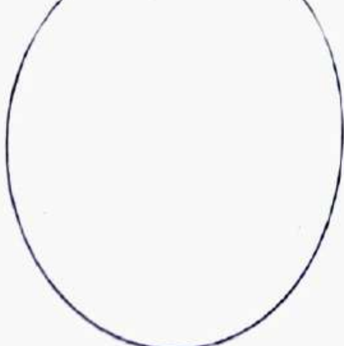
**What job do you want to do?**

| | |
|---|---|
| biologist | 30 |
| scientist | 10 |
| receptionist | 10 |
| journalist | 30 |
| pianist | 20 |

biologist
scientist
receptionist
journalist
pianist

Show this information on the chart.

| Sport | No. of players |
|---|---|
| football | 15 |
| basketball | 25 |
| volleyball | 30 |
| tennis | 10 |
| swimming | 20 |





Help your child use the pie chart.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم المخطط الدائري.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The grasshopper was ..................................................................................................................... .
   a) lazy b) fast c) big d) slow
2. The grasshopper thought work is ..................................................................................................... .
   a) fun b) interesting c) boring d) exciting
3. Now, it's winter and it is very ........................................................................................................ .
   a) cold b) hot c) warm d) windy
4. The ......................................................................................................................... is hungry.
   a) grasshopper b) bee c) lizard d) ant

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

grasshopper - cold - ant - hungry - food

It was winter and it was very cold. The grasshopper was ............................ . He didn't have any ............................ and he couldn't find any. The ............................ worked hard and now she has food. The ............................ didn't work and now he is hungry.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. gardens - flowers - The - are - of - full - .

...................................................................................................................................

2. ant - is - hard - The - working - .

...................................................................................................................................

3. a - is - Ahmed - receptionist - .

...................................................................................................................................

Help your child deal with such questions.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.

A) Choose the correct answer.

The ............................................................ are full of flowers.

a) gardens  b) clubs  c) schools  d) hospitals

The grasshopper is ............................................................

a) fast  b) kind  c) slow  d) lazy

b) Answer the following questions.

What are the ants doing?

............................................................

How does the grasshopper spend most of his time?

............................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇒ it's important to work hard

............................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The lazy grasshopper

Guiding words:

(lazy - boring - winter)

............................................................

............................................................

............................................................

Lessons (4 & 5)

# WRITING / PROJECT

## Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| operation | عملية جراحية | teamwork | عمل جماعي |
| concert | حفل موسيقي | computer programmer | مبرمج كمبيوتر |
| teammates | زملاء فريق العمل | | |

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| sick | مريض | team | فريق | injured | مصاب |
| indoors | بالداخل | dirty | قذر - متسخ | report | تقرير |
| outdoors | بالخارج | solution | حل | experiment | تجربة علمية |
| part | جزء | the worst | الأسوأ | distance | مسافة |
| aim | هدف | vet | طبيب بيطري | science | علوم |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

*Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| scare | يخيف | scared |
| solve | يحل | solved |
| prefer | | preferred |
| agree | | agreed |

*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| bring | يحضر | brought |
| meet | يقابل | met |
| win | | won |
| think | | thought |

## Important expressions and prepositions

| | |
|---|---|
| solve a problem | keen on |
| get up | good at |
| make friends | an experiment |
| work with | work out |
| disagree with | check on |

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very, very clean.

اسمي رنا. أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب وظيفتي. إذا كانت الحيوانات مريضة أو مصابة، أقوم بمساعدتهم على التحسن. في بعض الأيام أعمل بالداخل ويحضر الناس حيواناتهم إليّ. إذا احتاج حيوان إلى عملية جراحية، يجب أن تكون الحجرة نظيفة جدا جدا.

On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

في أيام أخرى، أذهب إلى بيوت أو مزارع الناس لفحص حيواناتهم. من الممكن أن تكون بعض الأماكن متسخة جدًا ولكن لا أمانع! ما أسوأ جزء في الوظيفة؟ إنه عندما يمرض حيوان في الليل واضطر إلى أن انهض من فراشي!

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games.

مرحبًا، أنا شريف. عندما كنت صغيرًا، علمت أنني لا أريد أن أعمل مع الحيوانات. إنها تخيفني. إنني لست متحمسًا لأن أكون بالخارج، لذلك كنت أريد وظيفة مكتبية. عندما كنت صغيرًا، كنت أحب لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.



أنا أيضًا أستمتع حقًا بحل المشاكل. لذلك في عملي أقوم بكلا الأمرين! أنا أيضًا أستمتع بالعمل مع الأشخاص الآخرين. يوجد ١٦ شخصًا في فريقي. نحن لا نتفق دائمًا ولكننا نتوصل لأفضل الحلول.

## Writing about a job.

الكتابة عن وظيفة.

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. Think about ....

عندما تفكر في وظيفة، من المهم أن تفكر في ما تحب وما لا تحب. فكر في ....

- being indoors or outdoors — أن تكون بالداخل أو الخارج
- traveling long distances — السفر لمسافات طويلة
- getting up very early — الاستيقاظ مبكرًا جدًا
- writing reports — كتابة تقارير
- meeting / talking to new people — مقابلة أو التحدث مع أشخاص جدد

It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. Think about ...

ومن المهم أيضا أن تفكر فيما تجيده وما لا تجيده. فكر في....

- solving problems — حل المشاكل
- helping sick people / animals — مساعدة الناس أو الحيوانات المريضة
- making new friends — تكوين صداقات جديدة
- reading lots of information — قراءة الكثير من المعلومات
- working in a team — العمل في فريق

## What job do / don't you want to do?

When I'm older, I want to be a ............... because ............... I think this is a good job for me because I like ............... I'm good at ............... and I enjoy ...............

I don't want to be a ............... because I'm not good at ...............

Also, I don't really enjoy ...............

## Model

When I'm older I want to be a doctor because I like being indoors.
I think it is a good job for me because I like helping sick people.
I'm good at checking people and I enjoy working hard

Help your child write about a job he / she wants to do.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الوظيفة التي يرغب في القيام بها.




# Project

- Look and read.

## Teamwork العمل الجماعي



I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.

أعمل في فريق في مادة العلوم عندما نقوم بعمل تجربة.



I work in a team when I'm playing football.

أعمل في فريق عندما ألعب كرة القدم.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.

أعمل في فريق عندما أساعد أمي في المطبخ بالمنزل.



I work in a team for the school concert.

أعمل في فريق من أجل حفل المدرسة الموسيقي.

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your teammates to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

عندما تعمل في فريق، فأنت تعمل مع الأشخاص الآخرين للقيام بعمل شيء معًا. على سبيل المثال، فإن هدف فريق كرة القدم هو الفوز. أنت تعمل مع زملائك في الفريق لتحقيق ذلك. ولا يمكنك الفوز بمباراة كرة القدم بمفردك!

Think! فكر!

What happens if you disagree with a teammate? How do you work out a solution?

ماذا يحدث إذا لم تتفق مع زميلك في الفريق؟ كيف تحل الموقف؟

# Activities

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

plants - job - better - animals - sick

My name's Rana. I work with ..........(1).......... and I love my ..........(2).......... If animals are ..........(3).......... or injured, I help to make them ..........(4)..........

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. She is a .................................... She works with animals.
   a) doctor b) vet c) baker d) teacher
2. He is a .................................... He loves the computer.
   a) doctor b) vet c) computer programmer d) pianist
3. If an animal needs an .................., the room has to be very clean.
   a) egg b) apple c) orange d) operation
4. You should work .................................... the best solution.
   a) to b) out c) up d) down
5. I work in a .................................... when I help mom in the kitchen.
   a) team b) class c) library d) hospital

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. science - a - I - team - work - in - .
   ....................................................................................................
2. want - to - I - work - animals - with - .
   ....................................................................................................
3. very - She - up - early - likes - getting - .
   ....................................................................................................



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. ........ scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Sherif wanted a/an .............................................. job.

   a) office  b) outside  c) outdoor  d) farm

2. Sherif enjoys working with other ..............................................

   a) animals  b) birds  c) plants  d) people

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Sherif love playing? ..............................................
4. What does the underlined pronoun "        " refer to? ..............

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

rana works with animals

..............................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of about (   ) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A job you want

Guiding words:

(journalist - a good job - writing reports - traveling)

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

..............................................................................................

# Review on Unit (5)

## Jobs

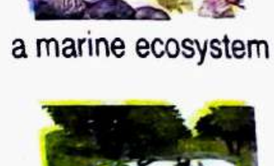

doctor


craftsman


trader



driver



a marine ecosystem

a desert ecosystem


a freshwater ecosystem


a rockpool ecosystem


fisherman


scribe


farmer

teacher


ant


grasshopper

hieroglyphs

tour guide


baker

# Jobs we do

Phonics

Language & Math

/aʊ/


down


town




/aɪ/

/ɔɪ/


why


eye


boy


enjoy

I eat fruits.

She catches a bus.

I must do my homework.

You mustn't walk on the grass.

## The suffix -ist


biologist


journalist


pianist


scientist

**Math**

a pie chart



# Writing Corner

* **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

## *Jobs in Ancient Egypt*

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

## *Women's jobs in Ancient Egypt*

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home. They could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market. Hatshepsut was a famous queen in Ancient Egypt.

## *A job you want*

When I'm older, I want to be a journalist because I like writing reports. I think this is a good job for me because I like reading lots of information. I'm good at reporting news and I enjoy meeting new people. I love this job. I want to be like my father.

## *Teamwork*

Teamwork is very important. I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment. I work in a team when I'm playing football. You can't win a football match by yourself! You work with your teammates to do this.

# Dictation on Unit (5)

## Lesson (1)

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | خباز |
| ........................ | فلاح - مزارع |
| ........................ | مدرس |
| ........................ | الكتابة الهيروغليفية |
| ........................ | ملكة |
| ........................ | سجلات |

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | طبيب |
| ........................ | حِرَفي |
| ........................ | تاجر |
| ........................ | كاتب |
| ........................ | صياد سمك |
| ........................ | مصر القديمة |

## Lesson (2)

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | حشرة |
| ........................ | أعشاب بحرية |
| ........................ | رمل |
| ........................ | سرطان البحر |
| ........................ | ماء |
| ........................ | ضوء الشمس |

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | النظام البيئي البحري |
| ........................ | النظام البيئي الصحراوي |
| ........................ | النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة |
| ........................ | النظام البيئي للبرك الصخرية |
| ........................ | كائنات حية |
| ........................ | كائنات غير حيّة |

## Lesson (3)

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | يطن |
| ........................ | ينط - يقفز |
| ........................ | فراشة |

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | نملة |
| ........................ | جرادة |
| ........................ | نحلة |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | العمل الجماعي |
| ........................ | مريض |
| ........................ | مبرمج كمبيوتر |
| ........................ | طبيب بيطري |

| Word | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ........................ | عملية جراحية |
| ........................ | يحل |
| ........................ | زميل في فريق العمل |
| ........................ | حفل موسيقي |

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# Activities on Unit (5)

في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hana is a ..............................
   a) vet b) teacher c) nurse d) pianist
2. Hana works with .............................. and she loves he
   a) plants b) animals c) dentists d) people
3. Hana helps to make sick animals ..............................
   a) bad b) ill c) injured d) better
4. Some days Hana works ........ and people bring their animals to
   a) outside b) on farms c) inside d) at people's hous

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

جابة الصحيحة:

1. .............................. buy and sell thi
   a) Nurses b) Doctors c) Teachers d) Traders
2. A .............................. help sick people to get be
   a) vet b) teacher c) doctor d) scribe
3. I always .............................. on the door before I enter
   a) liked b) knocked c) worked d) looked
4. Plants need .............................. and water to make foo
   a) oil b) sunlight c) ink d) clothes

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

busy - ago - grasshopper - hungry - hardworking

A long time ago, an ant and a grasshopper lived in a garder
The ........ (1) ........ always spent his time relaxing in the garder
His friend, the ant, was always ........ (2) ........ . The grasshoppe
always made fun of the ........ (3) ........ ant. Soon, the winter came.
It was too cold, and the grasshopper was ........ (4) ........ . The ant
was kind and let the grasshopper come in and gave him food.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut. Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1 The underlined word " " means very ..........

a) tall b) high c) old d) new

2 The text is about " .......... in Ancient Egypt".

a) men b) craftsmen

c) scribes d) women

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What could women make and sell at the market?

..........

4 Summarize the text in one sentence.

..........

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1 very - People - worked - in - hard - Ancient Egypt - .

..........

2 at - I'm - good - making - friends - new - .

..........



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Heba ........................................(catch) the bus every day.
2. We must ........................................(studies) hard.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ ahmed works in a hospital in cairo.

........................................................................................................

## 8 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونية من (30) كلمة.

Your name is Ali. Your email address is Ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Hany and his email address is Hany@yahoo.com

A job you want

Guiding words:

(doctor - helping - hard - sick )

From : ........................................

To : ........................................

Subject : ........................................

........................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................................................................................

........................................

........................................



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

teacher - night - sick - job - vet

Mona : Hello! What do you want to be?

Aya : I want to be a 1) ........................ .

Mona : Why do you want to be a vet?

Aya : Because I love helping 2) ........................ animals.

Mona : What's the worst part of this 3) ........................ ?

Aya : It's when an animal gets sick at 4) .......... , I have to get out of bed!

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

problems - solutions - programmer - working - computer

Adel : What would you like to be when you grow up?

Ali : I'd like to be a computer 1) ........................ .

Adel : Why would you like to have this job?

Ali : Because I enjoy solving 2) ........................ .

Adel : Do you enjoy 3) ........................ with other people?

Ali : Of course, we don't always agree, but we work out the best 4) ........ .

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ........................ helps sick animals.
   a) teacher b) doctor c) dentist d) vet
2. I ........................ tidy up the kitchen. It's messy.
   a) mustn't b) don't c) doesn't d) must
3. If an animal needs a/an ........................ , the room has to be clean.
   a) operation b) food c) work d) bag
4. Heba ........................ the bus to Cairo every morning.
   a) catch b) catches c) caught d) catching
5. ........................ is something that isn't alive.
   a) Living b) Non-living c) Rockpool d) Rainforest



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Unit (6) What's the weather like?

## ما حالة الطقس؟



### In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف....

- listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الطقس.
- read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
  يقرأ ويستمع لقصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
- use adverbs of frequency with the present simple.
  يستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط.
- understand a dialog about water pollution.
  يفهم حوارًا عن تلوث المياه.
- learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
  يتعلم التمييز بين الأصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.
- write an account of extreme weather.
  يكتب تقريرًا عن الطقس القارص.
- research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.
  يبحث ويكتب مطوية (نشرة) عن ما يجب فعله في الطقس القارص.

# Lesson (1) THE WEATHER

## Listen and say.

استمع وقل.


cloud
سحابة

cloudy
ملبء بالغيوم


rainbow
قوس قزح


rain
مطر


rainy
ممطر


storm
عاصفة

wind
رياح


windy
عاصف


snow
جليد


sun
الشمس


sunny
مشمس


ice
ثلج

## Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| climate | مناخ | news | أخبار | finally | في النهاية |
| Sharm El-Sheikh | شرم الشيخ | variety | تنوع | warm | دافيء |
| temperature | درجة الحرارة | London | لندن | dry | جاف |
| weather | طقس | Luxor | الأقصر | cool | منعش |
| normal | طبيعي | Cairo | القاهرة | degree | درجة حرارة مئوية |
| summer | الصيف | Alexandria | الإسكندرية | new | جديد |

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| rain | تمطر | rained |
| try | يحاول | tried |
| believe | يصدق | believed |

### *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| bring | يُحضر - يجلب | brought |
| mean | يقصد | meant |
| hear | يسمع | heard |

## Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| in the day | نهارًا | go down | تنخفض |
| at night | ليلًا | variety of | تنوع في |
| by the sea | بجانب البحر | bring water from | يجلب الماء من |
| around 12 °C | حوالي ١٢ درجة مئوية | per year | سنويًا - كل عام |
| get up | ينهض | fall down | يسقط |
| stay at home | يبقى في المنزل | What about? | ماذا عن؟ |
| keep cool / warm | يحافظ على برودة / دفء | a lot more | أكثر بكثير |

## Listen, read and role-play.

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

**Weather woman** : Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

صباح الخير جميعًا! أحمل لكم أخبار الطقس في مصر اليوم. سيكون الجو ممطرًا في القاهرة.

**Presenter** : Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!

ممطر في القاهرة؟ كم مرة تمطر في القاهرة؟ الجو دائمًا مشمس هناك.

**Weather woman** : I know, but today it's rainy.

أعلم، لكن الطقس اليوم ممطر.

**Presenter** : What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

ماذا عن شرم الشيخ؟

**Weather woman** : It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

الجو ليس باردًا أبدًا في شرم الشيخ، ولكن لدينا اليوم بعض الجليد.

**Presenter** : I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?

لا أصدق ذلك! ماذا عن الإسكندرية؟

**Weather woman** : It's going to be windy. That's normal - it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.

سيكون الطقس عاصفًا. هذا طبيعي - أحيانًا يكون الجو عاصفًا في الإسكندرية.

**Presenter** : Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?

حسنًا، شكرًا لك. وأخيرًا ماذا عن الأقصر؟

**Weather woman** : Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

أوه، هذا مهم جدًا: الأقصر ستواجه عاصفة، لذا أبق في المنزل!

Help your child ...

استمع واقرأ.

Unit (6)



## Listen and read.

### The weather in Egypt

الطقس في مصر

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places!
Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C.

لدينا طقس متنوع لطيف في مصر، على الرغم من أنه عادةً جاف جدًا. فلدينا فصول صيف شديدة الحرارة وتصل درجات الحرارة أحيانًا إلى 50 درجة مئوية في بعض الأماكن! وفصول الشتاء عندنا أكثر برودة، ومن الممكن أن تنخفض درجات الحرارة إلى حوالي 12 درجة مئوية.

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

الصحراء لها مناخ خاص جدًا، فهي شديدة الحرارة نهارًا وشديدة البرودة ليلًا عندما تصل الحرارة إلى درجة الصفر. وهذا يعني أن الأشخاص الذين يعيشون في الصحراء يحاولون الحفاظ على البرودة نهارًا والدفء في الليل.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more –Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

لا تمطر كثيرًا في القاهرة - يوجد فقط حوالي 25 ملليمتر من الأمطار كل عام. إنه قليل جدًا مقارنةً بلندن: فلندن تُقدر أمطارها بـ 600 ملليمتر في العام. الآن يمكنك معرفة سبب أهمية النيل للجميع في مصر. إنه يجلب لنا الماء من جهة الجنوب. بالقرب من البحر، تمطر أكثر من ذلك بكثير - في الإسكندرية تقدر مياه الأمطار بحوالي ثمانية أضعاف ما بالقاهرة ولذلك فهي خضراء جدًا.

**Did you know?**

°C is short for "degrees Celsius"

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have a nice variety of weather in ................ .
   a) Egypt   b) China   c) France   d) USA
2. In Cairo, it doesn't often ................ .
   a) dry   b) snow   c) rain   d) storm
3. There is only about ................ mm of rain every year.
   a) 52   b) 25   c) 5   d) 15
4. It's very little when you look at ...... . It has about 600 mm per year.
   a) Cairo   b) Aswan   c) London   d) Paris

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We wear coats to ................ warm in winter.
   a) try   b) hear   c) keep   d) mean
2. After it rains, we can see the ................ in the sky.
   a) rainbow   b) snow   c) sand   d) ice
3. The Nile brings the ................ from the south.
   a) wind   b) water   c) forest   d) wood
4. When the wind blows very hard, there is a ................ .
   a) could   b) storm   c) sun   d) star
5. By the sea, it rains ................ 
   a) many   b) little   lot
6. The desert has hot days and ................ nights.
   a) hot   b) sunn

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

nights - cool - desert - climate - dessert

The desert has a very special ..........(1).........., with very hot days and very cold ........(2)....... The temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the ........(3)........ try to keep ..........(4).......... in the day and warm at night.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. doesn't - often - It - in - Cairo - rain - .

..........................................................................................

2. is - important - Why - Nile - the - ?

..........................................................................................

3. yesterday - It - hot - was - sunny - and - .

..........................................................................................

4. The desert - a very - has - climate - special - .

..........................................................................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ i love Alexandria

..........................................................................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.
اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

**The weather in Egypt**

Guiding words:

( hot - cooler - dry - rain )

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

Lesson (2)

# MY HEAT WAVE STORY

## Listen and say.

استمع وقل.


tornado
إعصار - زوبعة


heat wave
موجة حارة


tidal wave
موجة المد والجزر


sandstorm
عاصفة رملية

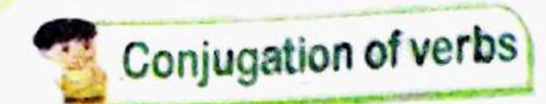

strong winds
رياح شديدة


flood
فيضان

## Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| watermelon | بطيخ | lemons | ليمون | son | ابن |
| lemonade | عصير ليمون | grapes | عنب | store | متجر |
| weekend | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع | floor | أرضية | suddenly | فجأة |
| voice | صوت "شخص" | outside | بالخارج | a cry | صرخة |
| nearby | مجاور - قريب | worried | قلق | lady | سيدة |
| shade | ظل | reply | رد - يرد | quiet | هادئ |




تصريف الأفعال

| *Regular verbs* أفعال منتظمة | | | *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Present** | | **Past** | **Present** | | **Past** |
| stay | يبقى - يمكث | stayed | become | يصبح | became |
| reply | يرد - يجيب | replied | lie | يستلقي | lay |
| knock | يطرق | knocked | know | يعرف | knew |
| pass | يمر - يجتاز | passed | feel | يشعر | felt |

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a bit open | مفتوح قليلًا | lying on the floor | مستلقي على الأرض |
| cool us down | لتقلل درجة حرارتنا | come back | يعود |
| come running | يأتي مسرعًا | fall down | يسقط |
| get ... onto a chair | يضع ... على الكرسي | At first | في البداية |
| in the day | في النهار | run outside | يجري خارجًا |




استمع واقرأ.

## My heat wave story

قصتي عن موجة حارة



The very hot summer became a heat wave.
A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees celcius , and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.

أصبح الصيف الحار جدًا موجة حارة. وتحدث الهوجة الحارة عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بشكل كبيرة فوق ٤٠ درجة مئوية، ولا يستطيع أحد فعل أي شيء. لقد مكثنا في الظل وحاولنا أن نشرب الكثير من الماء.

Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to bu
watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool
down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side o
the street, and past all our friends' houses.

طلبت أمي منّي أنا وصديقتي لمياء أن نذهب إلى المحل لشراء بطيخة، وعنب، وليمون لعمل عصير ليمون ليلطف من درجة
حرارتنا. ذهبنا إلى المحل وعدنا من الجانب الظليل من الشارع، ومرورًا بكل منازل أصدقائنا.

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard
a cry. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her
son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and
Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked and called 'Mrs
Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm
here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!'
she said.

وفجأة بينما كنا مارين بمنزل السيدة سهير، سمعنا صرخة. السيدة سهير سيدة عطوفة جدًا في السبعينات من عمرها
وتعيش مع ابنها، ولكنه يذهب إلى العمل نهارًا. أنا ولمياء كنا قلقتين وكان باب السيدة سهير مفتوحًا قليلًا، لذلك طرقنا
الباب وناديناا: "سيدة سهير!" في بادئ الأمر لم يكن هناك رد ثم سمعنا صوتًا هادئًا :"أنا هنا!" دخلنا إلى المطبخ وكانت
مستلقية على الأرض! قالت: "ساعدوني!"

At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw
Mr Monib, who works nearby. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I
called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto
a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit. She
said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and
fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very
happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

في بادئ الأمر لم نكن نعرف ما نفعله، لكن بعد ذلك ركضت إلى خارج المنزل ورأيت السيد منيب، الذي يعمل في مكان
قريب. ناديت عليه قائلة: "سيد منيب، من فضلك ساعد السيدة سهير!" جاء السيد منيب راكضًا. وساعدنا جميعًا في وضع
السيدة سهير على كرسي، ثم أعطيناها كثيرًا من الماء وبعضًا من الفاكهة.
قالت أنها ذهبت إلى المطبخ لإحضار بعض الماء، لكنها شعرت بالمرض وسقطت لأن الجو كان حارًا جدًا. لم تستطع
النهوض. كانت سعيدة جدًا أننا سمعناها، وكنا سعداء لأننا استطعنا مساعدتها.

Help your child ...

# Language Functions



## To ask and answer about the weather.

للسؤال والإجابة عن الطقس.

**1 -** في زمن المضارع البسيط:

What is the weather like today? - It is + حالة الطقس



What is the weather like today?

It is hot and sunny.



**2 -** في زمن الماضي البسيط:

What was the weather like yesterday? - It was + حالة الطقس



What was the weather like yesterday?

It was cloudy.



## To ask about your favorite weather / season.

للسؤال عن الطقس / الموسم المفضل لك.

What is your favorite + weather / season?

My favorite + weather / season + is ......

What is your favorite season?



My favorite season is summer.

Help your child ask and answer about weather.

ساعد طفلك ان يسال ويجيب عن حال الطقس.

... the weather like?

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Yesterday, I went to the ........................ with my friend Heba.
   a) library  b) club  c) school  d) store
2. We went there to buy some ........................ .
   a) fruit  b) fish  c) books  d) plants
3. The temperature was very ........................ .
   a) low  b) high  c) fast  d) slow
4. We came back on the ........................ side of the street.
   a) sunny  b) cold  c) shady  d) cloudy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Summer in Egypt is ........................ .
   a) windy  b) rainy  c) hot  d) cloudy
2. I ........................ on the door.
   a) cooked  b) knocked  c) looked  d) booked
3. I can hear my brother's ........................ .
   a) voice  b) choice  c) sound  d) run
4. We buy eggs and cheese at the ........................ .
   a) hospital  b) store  c) zoo  d) school

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

shady - temperature - outside - degrees - wave

My name is Ali. Yesterday, we had a very bad heat ........(1)........ in Cairo. The ........(2)........ was above 40 degrees Celsius. We couldn't go ........(3)........ . We had to stay at home, but we needed to buy some fruits and lemons to make lemonade. I went outside with my sister, and we walked on the ........(4)........ side of the street.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees Celsius, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. They went to the ..........................................
   a) park  b) school  c) store  d) zoo
2. The underlined word "high" is opposite of ..........................................
   a) far  b) new  c) low  d) old

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is a heat wave? ..........................................
4. Where did they come back? ..........................................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what was the weather like last weekend

..........................................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

**A heat wave**

Guiding words:

( temperature - high - shade - water )

..........................................

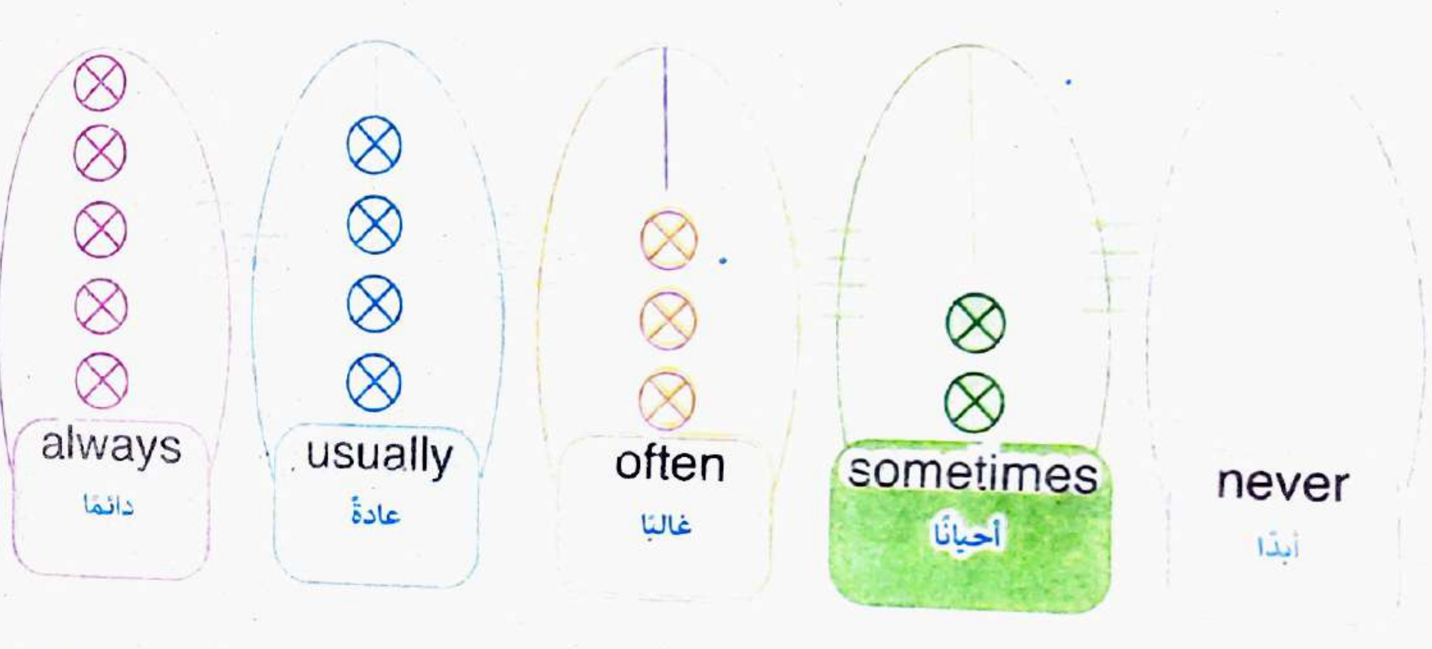
..........................................

..........................................

..........................................

# Language Focus

## Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار




- We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

- The adverb of frequency comes before the main verb.

يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

e.g. - I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- I never go to the park in the rain.

- The adverb of frequency comes after (am/is/are).

يأتي ظرف التكرار بعد "am/is/are".

e.g. I am always in bed at 11 pm.

Help your child use adverbs of frequency.

# How often ... ? كم مرة ...؟

. تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

How often + do + (you / we / they / اسم جمع) + inf. (المصدر)?
How often + does + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. - How often do you play tennis?

للإجابة.

Or
Subject + ظرف التكرار + main verb ....
Subject + (am / is / are) + ظرف التكرار ....

e.g. - I never play tennis. - We are never late for school.

## Activities

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How ............ do you visit your grandparents?
   a) many b) often c) tall d) much
2. ............ often do you go to the cinema?
   a) What b) When c) How d) Where
3. I ............ to the cinema on Fridays.
   a) go often b) often go c) goes often d) often goes
4. I go to school by bus every day. I ............ go on foot.
   a) sometimes b) always c) never d) often
5. How often ............ she make dinner?
   a) has b) does c) do d) have
6. How often ............ they watch TV?
   a) does b) is c) do d) are

7. He .................................... swims. He hates swimming.
   a) always b) never c) often d) usually
8. I .................................... in bed at 11 pm.
   a) am always b) be always c) always be d) always am
9. I don't play tennis on Saturdays. I .................... it on Sundays.
   a) always plays b) play often c) play never d) always play
10. I .................................... a sandwich for lunch.
   a) have always b) have c) have usually d) have often
11. Sami often .................................... to work by taxi.
   a) goes b) go c) went d) going
12. Ali .................................... late. He comes on time.
   a) is never b) am never c) never is d) is always

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. She .................... (always) drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
2. I usually .................... (visiting) my uncle on Fridays.
3. How .................... (long) do you go swimming?
   - I sometimes go swimming on weekends.
4. I .................... (never) watch TV at night. I watch it every day.
5. She .................... (gets always) a sandwich in the morning.
6. We .................... (always) go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.
7. .................... (What) often do you study English?
8. Heba sometimes .................... (go) to the club.
9. How ...(many) does Hend play tennis? - She never plays tennis.
10. We .................... (never are) late. We wake up very early.



Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.




# PRONUNCIATION

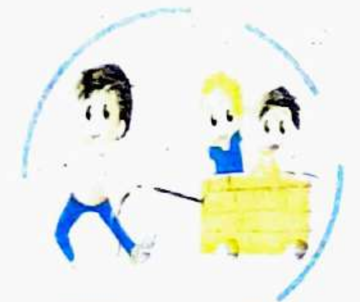
**Listen and repea .**

استمع و ردد.

## /p/



peach
خوخ



pull
يسحب - يجر



pea
بسلة / بازلاء



pear
كمثرى



beach
شاطئ



bull
ثور



bee
نحلة



bear
دُب

... your child distinguish between the / /and

ساعد طفلك ان يميز بين ال...

اقرأ وتعلم.

**Read and learn.**

We make the sounds /p/ and /b/ at the front of our mouths, by pressing our lips together. But they are different.

ننطق الأصوات /p/ و /b/ من مقدمة أفواهنا، بالضغط على شفاهنا معًا. لكنهم مختلفون.

| /p/ "unvoiced sound" | /b/ "voiced sound" |
|---|---|
| The air comes out of our mouths when we say it.<br>الهواء يخرج من أفواهنا عندما نقوله. | The vocal cords vibrate when we say it.<br>تهتز الأحبال الصوتية عندما نقوله. |
| 1. Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth.<br>ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك. | 1. Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth.<br>ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك |
| 2. Say the sound /p/<br>قل صوت /p/. | 2. Say the sound /b/<br>قل صوت /b/. |
| The paper moves.<br>تتحرك الورقة. | The paper doesn't move.<br>لا تتحرك الورقة. |

## Silent letters الحروف الصامتة

In English there are some words with silent letters – letters we don't pronounce.

في اللغة الانجليزية يوجد بعض الكلمات التي بها حروف صامتة ( لا ننطقها).



clim
يتسلق

t o
اثنان



our
ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة)



i land
جزيرة

Help your child identify silent letters in words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.

| knife | write | lamb | wrist |
|---|---|---|---|
| سكين | يكتب | حَمَل - خروف صغير | رسغ |

| knee | castle | sign |
|---|---|---|
| رُكبة | قلعة | لافتة |

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky - he had a knife, so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!

كان يتسلق على جزيرة مع قطتين. سقط على الشاطئ وأصاب رسغه. لكنه كان محظوظا جدا-كان لديه سكين ، لذلك صنع ضمادة وكتب رسالة في الرمال. بعد ساعتين ، جاء الناس لإنقاذه!



### 1 Listen and circle the word you hear.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها.

1. bee - pea
2. beach - peach
3. bear - pear
4. bull - pull

Help your child identify silent letters in words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

hours - knife - wrist

Ali was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his ............(1)............ . But he was very lucky. He had a ............(2)............ so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two ............(3)............ later, people came to save him!

## 3 Listen and tick (✓) the words with silent letter.

استمع وضع علامة ( ✓) أمام الكلمات التي بها حرف صامت.

1. wrist
2. knife
3. lamp
4. pen
5. pea
6. island

## 4 Circle the words that start with "b" in red. Circle the words that start with 'p' in green. Then look and match.

a



b


c


1. pear
2. beach
3. bear
4. bull
5. pull

6. peach

d


e


f


Lessons (4&5)

# WRITING & PROJECT

## Vocabulary

| English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| frightening | مرعب / مخيف | cool wind | رياح باردة |
| electric shock | صدمة كهربائية | heavy rain | أمطار غزيرة |
| extreme weather | طقس شديد | floods | فيضانات |
| air-conditioning | تكييف | lightning | برق |
| shade | ظل | electric wires | أسلاك كهربائية |
| extreme heat | حرارة شديدة | candle | شمعة |
| extreme cold | برد شديد (قارس) | power cut | انقطاع الكهرباء |
| tornadoes | أعاصير - زوابع | leaflet | نشرة - مطوية |
| safe × unsafe | آمن × غير آمن | torch | كشاف |
| inside × outside | بالداخل × بالخارج | dark | مظلم - داكن |



## Conjugation of verbs

***Regular verbs*** افعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| twist | يلتوي - يلوي | twisted |
| contact | يتصل | contacted |
| destroy | يدمر | destroyed. |
| protect | يحمي | protected |

***Irregular verbs*** افعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| spend | يقضي (وقت) | spent |
| shut | يغلق | shut |
| hurt | يؤذي - يضر | hurt |
| strike | يضرب | struck |



## Important expressions and prepositions

| Expression | Arabic | Expression | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| bits of houses | أجزاء من المنازل | get in | يدخل |
| find out | يكتشف/يعرف | turn off | يطفئ |
| look out of | ينظر من | get dark | تصبح مظلمة |

## Read about extreme weather in England.

اقرأ عن حالة الطقس الشديد (القارس) في إنجلترا.

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

لقد كنت في المدرسة مع زملائي في الفصل، ثم بدأ يحل الظلام. ذهبنا للخارج ثم رأيت الإعصار وكان مخيفًا للغاية. حيث أنه كان مثل سحابة سوداء كبيرة وعريضة. عندما اقترب منا الإعصار كان يكبر أكثر وكان يلتف حولنا. كان يمكننا أن نرى أشياء داخله، مثل الأبواب وأجزاء من المنازل! عندما اقترب منا، أصبح أكثر اتساعًا وأكثر ظلامًا. في اليوم التالي، اكتشفنا أن الإعصار أصاب الكثير من الناس، ودمر العديد من المنازل والمباني الأخرى.

## Read about another extreme weather event.

اقرا عن حالة طقس شديد أخرى.

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

في يوم من الأيام كنت أقود سيارة أنا وعائلتي عبر الصحراء لزيارة أولاد عمي. وبعد ٢٠ دقيقة نظرت من النافذة ورأيت عاصفة رملية. وسرعان ما كان هناك الكثير من الرمال في الجو خارج السيارة وأصبح من الصعب الرؤية. أغلقنا كل النوافذ ولكن الظلام غطى كل شيء. وكان هناك سيارات أخرى على الطريق وتساءلت هل سيصطدمون بنا ؟ لقد كنت خائفًا للغاية. قام أبي بإبعاد السيارة عن الطريق وتوقفنا. ولم نرى أي سيارات أخرى على الطريق ولكن كانت العاصفة الرملية تتحرك ببطء شديد. ثم فجأة ابتعدت. ورأينا الشمس مرة أخرى وقدنا السيارة عبر الصحراء.

Unit (6)

# Keeping safe in extreme heat

الحفاظ على سلامتك في الحرارة الشديدة

1 Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning.
حاول قضاء وقت في المباني الباردة المزودة بتكييف.

2 Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty.
اشرب كثيرًا من الماء حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش.

3 Open the windows when there's a cool wind.
افتح النوافذ عند وجود هواء بارد.

4 Wear light, cool clothing.
ارتدي ملابس خفيفة فاتحة اللون.

5 Eat small, light meals.
تناول وجبات صغيرة و خفيفة.

6 Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade.
لا تخرج. إذا كان يجب عليك الخروج، ابق في الظل.

# Keeping safe in a sandstorm

الحفاظ على سلامتك في العاصفة الرملية

1 Cover your head and face as much as possible.
غط وجهك ورأسك بقدر المستطاع.

2 If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in.
إذا كنت في المنزل تأكد من أن النوافذ مغلقة حتى لا تدخل الرمال.

3 Wear a scarf to protect your face.
ارتدي وشاحا لتحمي وجهك.

4 Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth.
ابق بالداخل حتى لا تدخل الرمال في فمك.

5 If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car.
إذا كنت تقود، حاول أن تصل إلى جانب الطريق حتى توقف سيارتك.

6 Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.
قم بإطفاء التكييف حتى تمنع دخول الرمال.

# Project A leaflet نشرة / مطوية

## How to keep safe in a storm

كيف تحافظ على سلامتك في عاصفة

### *What might happen in a storm?*

ماذا يمكن أن يحدث خلال العاصفة؟

- There might be very strong winds.

  قد تكون هناك رياح قوية جدًا.

- There might be heavy rain and lightning.

  قد تكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.

- It might not be safe to go outside – electric wires could fall.

  قد لا يكون الخروج آمنًا لاحتمال سقوط الأسلاك الكهربائية.

- There might be a power cut.

  قد يحدث انقطاع للكهرباء.

- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

  قد يحتاج الناس في الشوارع والمنازل أو السيارات إلى مساعدتك.





### *How can you protect yourself?*

كيف تحمي نفسك؟

- Stay inside and keep dry.

  ابق بالداخل وحافظ على جفافك.

- Make sure you have candles and torches – there might be a power cut.

  تأكد من وجود شموع ومصابيح - فقد يحدث انقطاع التيار الكهربائي.

- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.

  قم بالاتصال بأصدقائك وعائلتك للتحقق من سلامتهم.

- Don't go anywhere by train – this could be unsafe.

  لا تذهب لأي مكان بالقطار - يمكن أن يكون هذا غير آمن.

- Help anyone who is afraid.

  ساعد أي شخص يشعر بالخوف.

- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.

  لا تقف تحت الأشجار في حالة حدوث برق.

- Don't stand near wires-they could fall and give you an electric shock.

  لا تقف بالقرب من الأسلاك - فقد تسقط وتسبب لك صدمة كهربية.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I was at school with my ................................................................
   a) classmates b) parents c) cousins d) sisters
2. Then it started to get ................................................................
   a) heavy b) dark c) cold d) light
3. We went ................................................................
   a) inside b) in school c) outside d) outlook
4. I saw the tornado and it was very ................................................................
   a) safe b) happy c) easy d) frightening

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Wear a ................................ to protect your face in a sandstorm.
   a) dress b) gloves c) socks d) scarf
2. In extreme heat, you should wear ................................ cool clothes.
   a) heavy b) strong c) light d) warm
3. In a sandstorm, stay ................ so the sand can't get in your mouth.
   a) inside b) outside c) outdoors d) outdoor
4. Turn ................................ air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.
   a) on b) in c) off d) for

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

wind - drink - shade - thirsty - follow

There are some tips you should follow to be safe in extreme heat. You should .........(1)......... lots of water, even if you don't feel .........(2).......... Open the windows when there's a cool .........(3).......... Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the .........(4)..........

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, and the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. We saw the .................... again and drove through the desert.
   a) sun  b) moon  c) star  d) planet
2. The underlined word "difficult" is opposite of ....................
   a) hard  b) easy  c) short  d) young

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happened while they were driving? ....................
4. Did they see any more cars on the road? ....................

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ wear a scarf to protect your face

....................

## 6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

keeping safe in extreme heat

Guiding words:

(drink - open - cool - clothing- wear )

....................

....................

....................

# Review on Unit (6)


cloud


ice


rain


sunny


rainy


tornado


windy


cloudy


sandstorm


tidal wave


heat wave


sun


snow


rainbow

strong winds


flood

## What's the weather like?

/p/

pull pear peach pea

/b/

bull bear beach bee

**Silent letters**

climb island two

knife hour write

**Frequency adverbs**

| | |
|---|---|
| always | 100% |
| usually | 70% |
| often | 50% |
| sometimes | 25% |
| never | 0% |

**How often do you ... ?**

- I often sit on our balcony on hot nights.
- I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

# Writing Corner

* **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

## *The weather in Egypt*

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. Although it is usually very dry, we have hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places. Our winters are cooler. The desert is very hot in the day and very cold at night.

## *Weekends*

I love the weekends. I usually get up early at 7:00 in the morning. I sometimes take a shower and read a book. I help my mom make breakfast. In the afternoon, I always play tennis with my brother. We have a nice time together.

## *How to keep safe in extreme heat*

In extreme heat, we should drink lots of water, even if we don't feel thirsty. We should open the windows when there's a cool wind. We should wear light, cool clothing. We should try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning. We shouldn't go outside in hot weather.

## *Keeping safe in a storm*

To keep safe in a storm, you must cover your head and face. If you are at home, shut all the windows so no sand can get in. Stay inside and don't go out. If you must go out, stay in the shade. You mustn't stand under trees or near electric wires.

# Dictation on Unit (6)

## Lesson (1)

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| سحابة | |
| جليد | |
| قوس قزح | |
| مطر | |
| رياح | |
| عاصفة | |

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| ملئ بالغيوم | |
| درجة الحرارة | |
| ثلج | |
| مناخ | |
| طقس | |
| شمس | |

## Lesson (2)

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| موجة المد والجزر | |
| موجة حارة | |
| إعصار - زوبعة | |
| فيضان | |
| رياح شديدةٌ | |
| عاصفة رملية | |

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| دائمًا | |
| عادةً | |
| غالبًا | |
| أحيانًا | |
| أبدًا | |
| بالخارج | |

## Lesson (3)

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| خوخ | |
| يسحب - يجر | |
| بسلة | |
| كمثرى | |

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| شاطئ | |
| ثور | |
| نحلة | |
| دُب | |

## Lessons (4 & 5)

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| كشاف | |
| طقس شديد | |
| مرعب | |

| Meaning | Word |
| --- | --- |
| أسلاك كهربائية | |
| انقطاع الكهرباء | |
| ظل | |

Help your child dictate these words. ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

# Activities on Unit (5)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The tornado is very ...................................................... .
   a) safe b) good c) dangerous d) happy
2. The tornado is a very big, wide, black ...................................... .
   a) cloud b) star c) sun d) wind
3. The tornado can ...................................................... many homes.
   a) clean b) build c) paint d) destroy
4. The tornado can ...................................................... a lot of people.
   a) play b) hurt c) enjoy d) keep

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When the wind blows very hard, there is a/an ...................................... .
   a) storm b) sun c) cloud d) ice
2. In the desert, people try to keep ...................................................... at night.
   a) cold b) warm c) thirsty d) hungry
3. A ...................................................... is when the temperature goes very high.
   a) flood b) tornado c) storm d) heat wave
4. It's not safe to touch the ...................................................... .
   a) electric wires b) scarf c) boots d) leaflet

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

protect - inside - sand - face - driving

When there's a sandstorm, wear a scarf to protect your face. If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no .......(1)....... can get in. Cover your head and .......(2)....... as much as possible. so the sand can't get in your mouth. If you're Stay .......(3)....... so the sand can't get in your mouth. If you're .......(4)......., try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The text is about the weather in ..............................
   a) Egypt b) China c) India d) America
2. The underlined word "variety" means ..............................
   a) same b) different c) like d) good

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What is the weather like in the desert? ..............................
4. Does the desert have a special climate? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. often - go - I - the - to - cinema - .
2. you - often - How - do - tennis - play - ?

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Hend .............................. (always) goes swimming. She can't swim.
2. How ....... (fast) does it rain in the desert? - It never rains in the desert.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

➪ omar stayed at home last weekend

..............................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

How to keep safe in extreme heat

Guiding words:

( extreme - drink - windows - cool clothing - air-conditioning )

# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

**driving - shade - cool - do - outside**

Hany : How can I keep safe in extreme heat?

Samy : Don't go 1) .............................................................. .

Hany : What should I 2) .............................. if I have to go outside?

Samy : Stay in the 3) .............................................................. .

Hany : What about spending time in 4) ......... buildings with air-conditioning.

Samy : That's great!

## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

**play - often - do - usually - brother**

Hend : How 1) .............................................. do you play tennis, Hend?

Rania : I always 2) .............................................................. tennis.

Hend : Who 3) .............................................................. you play with?

Rania : I usually play with my 4) .............................................. .

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In winter, it's usually cold and .............................................. .
   a) sunny b) rainy c) hot d) heat
2. After it rains, we can see the .............................. in the sky.
   a) rainbow b) ice c) sand d) moon
3. Don't go .............................................. if there's a sandstorm.
   a) inside b) indoor c) outside d) in
4. Mona doesn't like music. She .............................. listens to music.
   a) always b) usually c) never d) sometimes
5. How often .............................................. you go to the library?
   a) does b) have c) has d) do

# Review 2

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called 'fables' – they always had a moral. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is: Be kind and patient with people.

كان إيسوب كاتباً مشهورًا في اليونان القديمة. كتب قصصًا تسمي (خرافات إيسوب). كانت تحتوي دائمًا علي درس أخلاقي. هذا الدرس الأخلاقي يعلمنا أن نكون طيبين ومتعاونين مع الآخرين. مثال للدرس الأخلاقي: كن طيبًا (عطوفًا) وصبورًا مع الناس.

## Read the fable.

اقرأ الأسطورة.

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

كانت "ريح الشمال" تحاول أن تجعل "الشمس" غاضبة. و قالت: "أنا قوي جداً - أنا أقوى منك". نظر لأسفل ونفخ الريح و أسقط بعض الأشجار في الطريق. ردت "الشمس" مبتسمة أنا لست متأكدًا أنك أقوي مني".

At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind said. "Of course I'm going to win." He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He didn't let the Wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped.

في تلك اللحظة كان رجلا يرتدى معطفا يمشي علي امتداد الطريق. قالت الشمس للريح. "وهو كذلك، دعنا نرى. من يستطيع أن يجعل الرجل يخلع معطفه؟" قالت الريح "هسم بالطبع أنا سأفوز". نظرت لأسفل علي المسافر ثم هبت وهبت. شعر الرجل بالريح وشعر بالبرد. وشد معطفه بشدة حوله. لم يسمح للرياح أن تعصف بمعطفه. كانت الريح غاضبةً ولكنها تعبت وتوقفت.

Then the Sun came out and began to shine. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!." He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better," he said. The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away!

ثم خرجت "الشمس" وبدأت تسطع قال الرجل «يا الهي» «الجو حار جداً» وشعر بالحر الشديد و خلع معطفه ثم قال «هذا أفضل». نظرت "الشمس" لريح الشمال وقالت لقد فزت. كانت ريح الشمال غاضبة وهبت بعيدًا!.



Help your child read one of Aesop's fables.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرأ احدى قصص ايسوب.

# Activities on Review (2)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nada is on Elephantine ..........
   a) Park  b) Island  c) Lake  d) Sea
2. Elephantine Island is in ..........
   a) Fayoum  b) Cairo  c) Aswan  d) Giza
3. Nada was traveling to the island with her ..........
   a) family  b) friends  c) sisters  d) mother
4. Elephantine Island is the .......... part of Aswan.
   a) oldest  b) longest  c) fastest  d) nearest

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This calendar is from the .......... of Thutmose III.
   a) reign  b) house  c) week  d) parents
2. Tourists pay for rooms in .......... at night.
   a) caves  b) hotels  c) schools  d) parks
3. Ancient Egyptians used .......... to write every thing down.
   a) Arabic  b) English  c) hieroglyphs  d) French
4. The tornado scares me. It's ..........
   a) nice  b) good  c) wonderful  d) frightening

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

Ecosystems - natural - difficult - Living - rainforest

Everything in the natural world is connected. ......(1)...... can be small, like a rockpool. They also can be big, like the Amazon ......(2)...... . ......(3)...... and non-Living things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of ......(4)...... ecosystems.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good, too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen were very ..............................
   a) good   b) bad   c) sad   d) unhappy
2. The underlined word "expensive" is the opposite of ..............................
   a) cheap   b) good   c) fat   d) tall

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What did scribes spend many years learning? ..............................
4. What did craftsmen make? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. school - was - I - at - my - with - classmates - .
2. as - people - worked - scribes - Fewer - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Hend .............. (always) walks to school. She always goes by car.
2. Ali was .............................. (watch) TV at 10 pm yesterday.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇒ my name's rania.

..............................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The job you want to do

Guiding words:

(fisherman - boat - sea - fish)



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

# Project

## Climate change and how it affects Egypt

تغير المناخ وكيف يؤثر على مصر

### What is climate change?



a glacier melting



a drought



a flood

Climate change is the long-term shift in weather patterns. It can be caused naturally by volcanoes. However, at the moment, humans are causing climate change by releasing lots of pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises, we get droughts because the water evaporates.

تغير المناخ هو التغير طويل المدى في أنماط الطقس. يمكن أن يكون سببه ثوران البراكين بشكل طبيعي. ومع ذلك، في الوقت الحالي، يتسبب البشر في تغير المناخ من خلال إحداث الكثير من التلوث. ترتفع درجة الحرارة و تذوب الأنهار الجليدية. وهذا يعني أن مستويات سطح البحر ترتفع أيضا. عندما يرتفع مستوى سطح البحر، تحدث الفيضانات. عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة، يحدث الجفاف لأن الماء يتبخر.

Climate change might cause problems to agriculture. There might not be enough water to grow crops. One solution to drought is to use soil-less farming. See the photo below. In this way, you grow plants without using soil. Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses. And so you save water and time.

قد يتسبب تغير المناخ في مشاكل الزراعة. فقد لا يكون هناك مياه كافية لزراعة المحاصيل. أحد الحلول لمشكلة الجفاف هو أن نستخدم الزراعة بدون التربة. انظر الصورة أدناه: بهذه الطريقة أنت تزرع النباتات بدون التربة. تحصل المحاصيل على الكمية المناسبة للماء والمواد المغذية في الصوبات الزراعية المخصصة. وبذلك يمكنك توفير الماء والوقت.



soil-less agriculture in Egypt

Help your child read a project about climate change.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ مشروع عن تغير المناخ.

# Listening Texts

## Unit (1)

### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

My favorite food is chocolate. But it is unhealthy to eat a lot. So I eat a little. My friend Fareeda likes chicken and fish.

### Lesson (2)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Heba. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables and rice for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

### Lesson (3)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Jack was a kind boy. He met an old man and bought his special beans to help him. The next morning, he found that the beans grew into a giant stalk. He climbed the stalk and found a hen in a cage.

### Activities On Unit (1)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

My favorite food is mango. I like to eat it. It is a healthy food. We have a mango tree in the garden. My father sometimes sells mangoes at the market.

## Unit (2)

### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Anas and Seif are talking about sports. Anas loves squash. Anas is bad at playing tennis but he is good at football. Seif is good at playing tennis, but he's bad at playing handball.

### Lesson (2)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Hi!, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He is 11 years old. He's good at playing tennis but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen!

### Lesson (3)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Ola. I play football. I love kicking the ball on the pitch. I wear my football boots. My friend Hana plays tennis. She uses the rackets and runs fast on the court.

### Lessons (4&5)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993.She won a bronze medal in Tokyo 2021. She is a very kind person.

### Activities On Unit (2)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Adel and Hana like sports. Adel likes karate as he can do lots of moves. He also loves kung fu because he likes when he does high kicks. Hana likes to swim. She goes to swimming pool on Friday. She often puts on her swimming goggles to protect her eyes.

## Unit (3)

### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Noha. I'll pack my suitcase for our holiday tomorrow. I'm excited. I need to pack my green T-shirt. I won't need a coat, but I should take my sunglasses. I'll pack my purple sweater. It's cool at night.



### Lesson (2)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Marwa is wearing a costume. Marwa looks like a princess. Marwa is wearing a spotted dress. Marwa has white gloves on her hands.

### Activities On Unit (3)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Mona goes to the party with her sister. Mona is wearing as a princess. She has white gloves on her hands. She has a crown on her head. She is wearing a striped dress.

### Review (1) On Units (1 - 3)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Hana. I like many kinds of fruit. My favorite fruit is mango. We have a mango tree in our garden. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. Mango is known as the king of fruits. It's also the national fruit of India. Mango grows during the summer season.

## Unit (4)

### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Eman visited Elephantine Island last month. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history and amazing sights. You can visit the Aswan Museum.

### Activities On Unit (4)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

My name is Sara. My favorite place in Egypt is the Elephantine Island in Aswan. It's the most fantastic place. It is a very beautiful and calm place. The Island is full of history.

## Unit (5)

### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. Scribes could write everything down. They kept records and lists of important things.

### Lesson (3)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

The grasshopper was lazy. He thought work is boring. Now, it's winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. The ant wasn't lazy. She worked and now she has food.

### Activities On Unit (5)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

I'm Hana and I'm a vet. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me.

## Unit (6)

### Lesson (1)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. In Cairo, it doesn't often rain; there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year.

### Lesson (2)

**1) Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Yesterday, I went to the store with my friend Heba. We went there to buy some fruit. The temperature was very high. It was

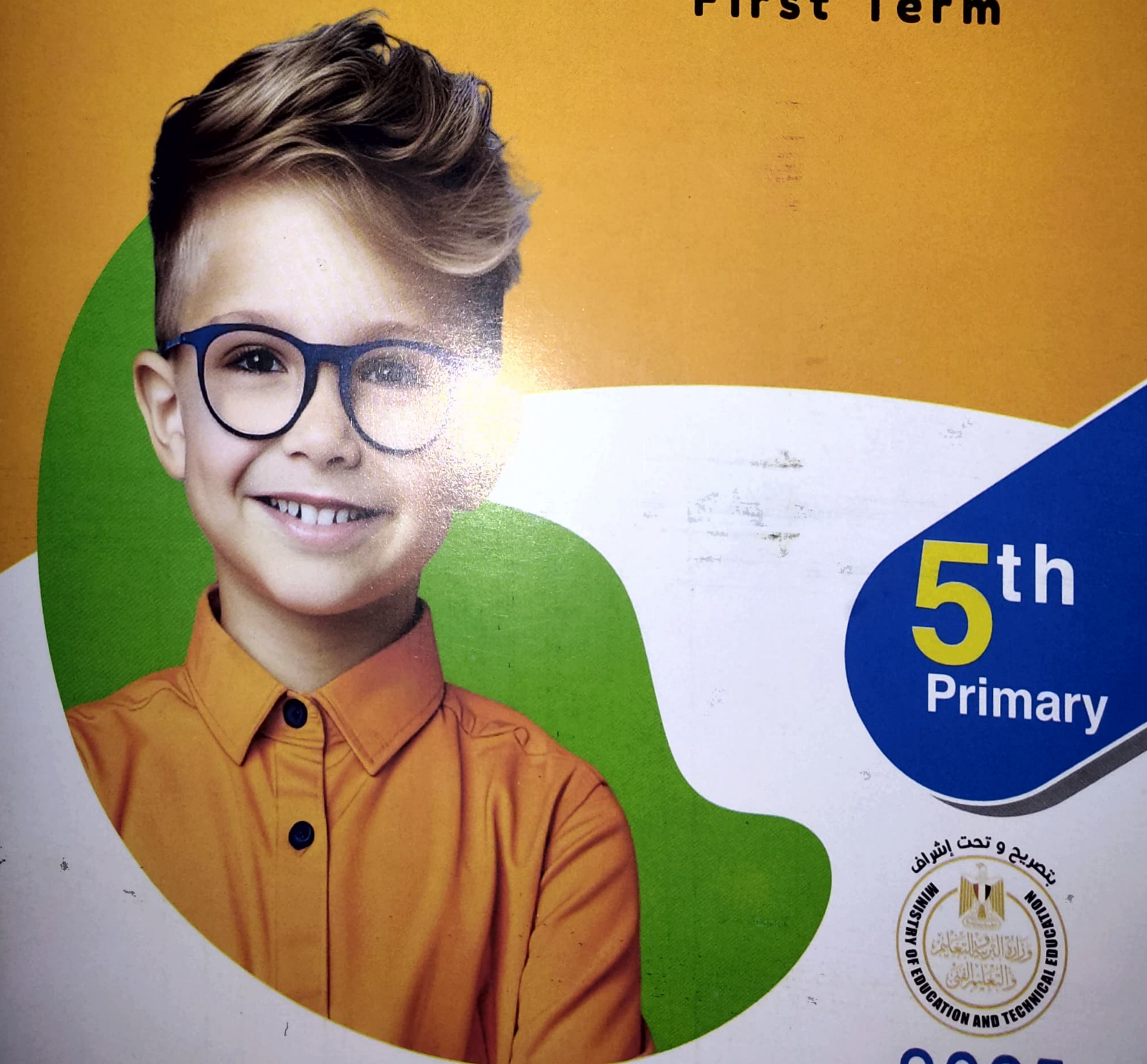
AL-BAHER

# CONNECT

## Final Revision

الصف الخامس الابتدائي

**First Term**





# LANGUAGE FOCUS

## Countable & Uncountable Nouns
الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد

### Countable nouns الأسماء التي تُعد

. هي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع.
. الاسم المفرد هو الذي يُعد ويمكن أن يسبقه (a / an)

- a banana → bananas
- an egg → eggs

### Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تُعد

. هي الأسماء التي ليس لها جمع ولا يمكن عدها.
. الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تسبق بـ (a / an)

- rice
- chocolate
- bread

### A / An

- We use "a" with singular countable nouns that begin with a consonant.

نستخدم (a) مع الأسماء المفردة التي تعد و تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

- a mango
- a pineapple
- a banana

- We use "an" with singular countable nouns that begin with a vowel.

نستخدم (an) مع الأسماء المفردة التي تعد و تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

- an onion
- an egg
- an orange

تذكر: الحروف المتحركة هي (a - e - i - o - u)

### some

**some** بعض

- We use "some" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in affirmative sentences.

نستخدم (some) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء التي لا تُعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. - I'd like some apples, please. - I'd like some rice, please.

## any

**any** أي

- We use "any" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences.

نستخدم (any) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة ومع الأسماء التي لا تُعد في الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية.

e.g. - Are there any tomatoes? - We haven't got any milk.

## Note:

- **We use "some" in request and offer questions.**

نستخدم (some) في سؤال الطلب والعرض.

e.g. Can I have some grapes? (Request)

Would you like some chocolate? (Offer)

### Making suggestions:

عمل الاقتراحات

How about + v-ing .....? وماذا عن ....؟

e.g. How about buying some lemons?

Let's + inf. هيا بنا .....

e.g. Let's buy a nice pineapple.

عند قبول الاقتراح نقول:

- Good idea! فكرة جيدة!
- OK. حسنًا.

عند رفض الاقتراح نقول:

- No, thank you. لا، شكرًا لك.
- No, thanks. لا، شكرًا.



### Making offers:

عمل عروض

Would you like .....? هل تود ...؟

e.g. Would you like some tea? - Yes, please. - No, thank you.

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Are there any .................................................. ?
   a) tomato  b) tomatoes  c) potato  d) carrot
2. I would like .................................................. eggs, please.
   a) an  b) some  c) a  d) any
3. Please, can I have .................................................. apple?
   a) a  b) any  c) an  d) some
4. I would like .................................................. pineapples.
   a) a  b) some  c) an  d) any
5. She would like .................................................. orange.
   a) some  b) an  c) any  d) a
6. Do you have .................................................. carrots, please?
   a) a  b) some  c) any  d) an
7. How about buying an .................................................., Mom?
   a) apples  b) apple  c) oranges  d) onions
8. How about buying some .................................................. ?
   a) grapes  b) grape  c) onion  d) apple
9. I would like .................................................. potatoes.
   a) a  b) an  c) some  d) any
10. Are there .................................................. apples?
    a) an  b) a  c) same  d) any
11. Make sure you eat .................................................. balanced diet.
    a) a  b) an  c) any  d) some
12. He saw .................................................. castle.
    a) a  b) an  c) some  d) any

13. Would you like some ........................................ ?
   a) apple   b) bananas   c) banana   d) orange
14. Would you like ........................................ ice cream?
   a) a   b) an   c) any   d) some
15. Can I have ........................................ grapes, too?
   a) a   b) any   c) some   d) an
16. I would like ........................................ banana, please.
   a) any   b) a   c) an   d) some
17. I would like ........................................ rice, please.
   a) a   b) an   c) any   d) some
18. We haven't got ........................................ grapes.
   a) a   b) some   c) any   d) an
19. Rawda has ........................................ mango tree in her garden.
   a) any   b) a   c) an   d) some
20. Farida buys ........................................ eggs at the market.
   a) a   b) an   c) any   d) some
21. We grow ........................................ seeds in our garden.
   a) a   b) an   c) some   d) any
22. You are ........................................ kind boy.
   a) some   b) a   c) an   d) any
23. How about buying some ........................................ ?
   a) coconut   b) coconuts   c) orange   d) apple
24. Are there ........................................ beans?
   a) a   b) an   c) any   d) some
25. We have a ........................................ in our garden.
   a) seeds   b) tree   c) trees   d) flowers

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. We have .................................... (some) lime tree in our garden.
2. I would like .................................... (an) bananas, please.
3. I would like .................................... (an) rice, please.
4. Are there .................................... (some) tomatoes?
5. We haven't got .................................... (some) grapes.
6. How about buying .................................... (any) lemons?
7. Would you like .................................... (a) orange?
8. Can I have .................................... (any) grapes, too?
9. Would you like some .................................... (potato)?
10. Do you have .................................... (some) carrots?
11. Are there .................................... (some) carrots?
12. I have a .................................... (pens) in my pencil case.
13. Would you like .................................... (any) milk?
14. I don't have .................................... (some) potatoes.
15. My grandmother needs .................................... (any) tomatoes.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. apples - Are - any - there - ?

....................................................................................................

2. about - grapes - some - buying - How - ?

....................................................................................................

3. some - like - would - I - eggs - .

....................................................................................................

# Good at جيد في

- To talk about things we do or don't do well, we use:

عندما نتحدث عن الأشياء التي نقوم بها بشكل جيد أو لا نقوم بها بشكل جيد نستخدم:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| good at | جيد في | | v + ing |
| great at | رائع في | + | |
| bad at | سيئ في | | noun |

- I'm very good at swimming.
- I'm great at football.
- I'm bad at sailing.

## Spelling rules

### ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف (e-) غير المنطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) نحذف (e-) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e-) منطوقاً فلا نحذف ونضاف (ing)

make → making  take → taking  be → being

عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون

swim → swimming  sit → sitting  stop → stopping




اقرأ وتعلم.



I'm good at reading Arabic, but I'm bad at art. What about you?

أنا جيد في قراءة اللغة العربية، لكنني سيئ في الرسم، وماذا عنك؟

I'm bad at playing the piano, but I'm good at singing.

أنا سيئ في العزف على البيانو، لكنني جيد في الغناء.



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm good at .............................................. football.
   a) play b) playing c) played d) plays
2. My brother is very good at .............................................. poems.
   a) write b) writes c) wrote d) writing
3. Sami's bad at .............................................. French.
   a) speaking b) speaks c) spoke d) speak
4. They're great at .............................................. their mom in the kitchen.
   a) helps b) help c) helping d) helped
5. I'm great .............................................. playing basketball.
   a) in b) on c) of d) at
6. I'm very bad at ..............................................
   a) sail b) sails c) sailing d) sailed
7. I'm very good at ..............................................
   a) draws b) drawing c) draw d) drew
8. He's very bad at .............................................. cakes.
   a) make b) makes c) made d) making
9. He's good .............................................. making shawerma.
   a) with b) on c) at d) in
10. I'm great at .............................................. Arabic.
    a) is reading b) reading c) reads d) read
11. I'm bad at .............................................. dinner.
    a) make b) making c) makes d) made
12. I'm good at .............................................. the piano.
    a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

13. I'm bad at ..........................................................................

a) sang b) sing c) sings d) singing

14. Monkeys are good at .......................................................... trees.

a) climb b) climbing c) climbs d) climbed

15. Cats are good at ..........................................................................

a) jump b) jumps c) jumping d) jumped

16. Camels are good at .................................................. across the desert.

a) walks b) walk c) walking d) walked

17. Mazen is bad at .......................................................... jigsaws.

a) do b) does c) did d) doing

18. Reem is great at ..........................................................................

a) cooking b) cooked c) cook d) cooks

19. Dad is bad .......................................................... swimming.

a) for b) on c) at d) in

20. Salma is good at .......................................................... math.

a) do b) doing c) does d) did

21. Rana is bad at .......................................................... her room.

a) tidy b) tidying c) tidies d) tidied

22. I'm good .......................................................... table tennis..

a) of b) on c) with d) at

23. I'm bad .......................................................... handball.

a) in b) at c) to d) up

24. Dina is .................................................. at karate. She is the best.

a) good b) bad c) sad d) wrong

25. Hazem is .................................................. at football. He can't play it.

a) great b) good c) bad d) clever

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Dina is good at ............................................. (speak) English.
2. Mom is good at ............................................. (cook).
3. Monkeys are good ............................................. (in) climbing trees.
4. I'm bad at ............................................. (plays) handball.
5. My sister is good at ............................................. (writes) poems.
6. She's great at ............................................. (read) Arabic.
7. He's bad at ............................................. (made) dinner.
8. I'm good at ............................................. (plays) the piano.
9. He's very bad ............................................. (on) making cakes.
10. I'm great at ............................................. (sail).
11. Ali ............................................. (are) good at swimming.
12. I'm good ............................................. (on) football.
13. The children ............................................. (is) good at painting.
14. Mona is great ............................................. (in) drawing.
15. We are bad at ............................................. (climb) trees.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. good - at - very - drawing - I'm - .

.............................................................................................

2. football - is - good - Ahmed - at - playing - .

.............................................................................................

3. making - is - bad - She - at - dinner - .

.............................................................................................

## 1- Infinitive of purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

- **We use (to + infinitive) to express purpose; and to say why someone does something.**

نستخدم ( المصدر + to ) للتعبير عن الغرض ولبيان لماذا يقوم الشخص بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. Why did she go to town?

- She went to town to buy a dress. ذهبت إلى المدينة لكي تشتري فستانا.

e.g. Why did you go to the hall?

- I went to the hall to get my coat. ذهبتُ إلى الصالة لكي أحضر معطفي.

---

## 2- The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم ليدل على حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي

e.g. He traveled to Aswan last year.

Mayar made a cake two days ago.

### Form التكوين

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة ( d, ed, ied ) للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ كما هو.

play ⟶ played      go ⟶ went

### Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. I didn't play football yesterday.

She didn't go to the zoo last week.

## (Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ......?

e.g. Did you see your friends yesterday?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

## Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (المصدر) ......?

e.g. Why did you go to your bedroom?
- I went to my bedroom to sleep.

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | ago | منذ | in the past | في الماضي |
| in + (تاريخ ماضي) | في ... | last (week - month - year) | (الأسبوع، الشهر، العام) الماضي | | |

e.g. They went to the library yesterday.

# Activities

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I went to the library ........................ a book.
   a) borrow b) to borrow c) borrows d) borrowing
2. Injy used a pen ........................ her essay.
   a) to write b) write c) writing d) wrote
3. Sherif bought a new suitcase ........................ on holiday.
   a) take b) taking c) to take d) takes
4. Malak wears her sunglasses ........................ her eyes.
   a) protecting b) to protect c) protects d) protect

5. She went to town ............................................ a new dress.
   a) buying    b) buy    c) bought    d) to buy

6. He bought new sneakers ............................................ for playing football.
   a) wear    b) to wear    c) wears    d) wore

7. I went to the hall ............................................ my coat.
   a) getting    b) gets    c) to get    d) got

8. I wore a galabeya ............................................ cool.
   a) to stay    b) stays    c) stayed    d) stay

9. Sameh went to town ............................................ new sneakers.
   a) buy    b) bought    c) to buy    d) buying

10. Nessma went to the kitchen ............................................ a cake.
   a) made    b) make    c) makes    d) to make

11. Tarek made a suit ............................................ in a wedding.
   a) wear    b) to wear    c) wore    d) wearing

12. I bought some sunglasses ............................................, on holiday.
   a) wear    b) wears    c) to wear    d) wearing

13. We went to the park ............................................ with our friends.
   a) playing    b) to play    c) plays    d) play

14. Hazem studied hard ............................................ good grades.
   a) getting    b) gets    c) got    d) to get

15. Basma went to the shop ............................................ some bread.
   a) buy    b) to buy    c) buys    d) bought

16. They went to the library ............................................ their homework.
   a) to finish    b) finishing    c) finish    d) finished

17. I went to my bedroom ............................................ .
   a) sleeps    b) sleep    c) to sleep    d) sleeping

18. Nayera left the party .................... her train.
   a) to catch b) catch c) catches d) caught
19. Adam called Younis .................... for help with his project.
   a) ask b) asks c) to ask d) asked
20. Tarek bought a racket .................... tennis.
   a) play b) to play c) plays d) played

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. He went to town .................... (buys) a shirt.
2. I wore a galabeya .................... (stay) cool.
3. She went to the library .................... (read) a book.
4. She wore sunglasses .................... (protects) her eyes.
5. Rawda studied hard .................... (get) good grades.
6. We went to the park .................... (plays) with our friends.
7. I went into town .................... (buy) a bike.
8. I went to the bedroom .................... (sleeps).
9. He bought a racket .................... (play) tennis.
10. She went to the shop .................... (buys) some biscuits.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. library - She - borrow - went - to - books - the - to - some - .

....................................................................................................

2. bought - I - to - on - wear - sunglasses - holiday - .

....................................................................................................

3. hard - grades - to - Hazem - get - studied - good - .

....................................................................................................

# The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

## Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.**

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لنعبر عن شيء حدث واستمر لفترة زمنية في الماضي.

e.g. She was sleeping at 6 am yesterday.

## Form التكوين

| | |
|---|---|
| I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was<br>You / We / They / اسم جمع + were | + (verb + ing) |

e.g. I was listening to the radio.

She was making her bed.

We were swimming in the sea.

They were playing football when Tom fell down.

### Spelling rules

**ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل**

١- عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف (-e) غير المنطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (-e) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (-e) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

make → making take → taking be → being

٢- عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

swim → swimming sit → sitting stop → stopping

## Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not + (wasn't) + (verb + ing)
You / We / They/ اسم جمع + were not + (weren't) + (verb + ing)

e.g. He wasn't listening to music.

We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

## (Yes / No) question السؤال بـ(هل)

**Was** + (I - he - she - it - اسم مفرد) + (verb + ing)....?
**Were** + (you - we - they - اسم جمع) + (verb + ing)....?

e.g. Was he swimming in the lake? - Yes, he was.

Were they making a cake? - No, they weren't.

## Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

**Q.W.** + was + (I - he - she - it - اسم مفرد) + (verb + ing)....?
**Q.W.** + were + (you - we - they - اسم جمع) + (verb + ing)....?

e.g. What was he doing yesterday evening?

- He was watching TV.

e.g. What were you doing last Friday evening?

- I was visiting my uncle.

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Yesterday morning
at 5 am yesterday

Yesterday evening
at 7 pm yesterday

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The fox .................................... at 4:00 pm yesterday.
   a) was sleeping b) is sleeping c) sleep d) sleeps
2. The fish .................................... yesterday morning.
   a) is swimming b) swims c) swim d) was swimming
3. The tiger .................................... water at 2:00 yesterday.
   a) drinks b) drink c) will drink d) was drinking
4. People .................................... at 8 am yesterday.
   a) were walking b) walks c) walking d) walk
5. I .................................... a film yesterday evening.
   a) watching b) watches c) watch d) was watching
6. We .................................... a great time this morning.
   a) have b) has c) had d) were having
7. Was the cat .................................... fast?
   a) ran b) run c) running d) runs
8. She .................................... lunch at 3:00 pm yesterday.
   a) is having b) will have c) have d) was having
9. He .................................... English at 8:30 pm yesterday.
   a) was studying b) studies c) study d) is studying
10. I .................................... yesterday noon.
    a) sleep b) sleeps c) sleeping d) was sleeping
11. He .................................... breakfast at 7:30 am yesterday.
    a) has b) will have c) had d) was having
12. We .................................... to understand the "Elephantine" name.
    a) were trying b) tries c) trying d) was trying

13 I ........................ in one of the Nubian villages this morning.
a) were walking b) was walking c) walks d) has walked

14 I ........ by boat to the island with my friends at 7 am yesterday.
a) was traveling b) travels c) travel d) will travel

15 We ........................ at all the old things when we found a calendar.
a) were looking b) looks c) look d) looked

16 We ........................ by ship to the island.
a) were traveling b) was traveling c) travels d) has traveled

17 Mom ........................ a cake yesterday evening.
a) is making b) was making c) make d) made

18 They ........................ in the sea.
a) was swimming b) is swimming c) swims d) were swimming

19 Was he ........................ to music?
a) listening b) listened c) listen d) listens

20 We ........................ delicious cakes.
a) makes b) making c) makes d) were making

21 What ........................ at 6 am yesterday?
a) do you do b) will you do c) do d) were you doing

22 ........................ they swimming in a lake?
a) Is b) Was c) Am d) Were

23 What ........................ you doing at 8 am yesterday?
a) are b) was c) were d) will

24 He ........................ down the road yesterday evening.
a) walks b) is walking c) walk d) was walking

25 She ........................ an ice cream.
a) weren't eating b) don't eat c) eating d) wasn't eating



## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. They .................................... (was) looking at photos.
2. We .................................... (watch) TV at 6 pm yesterday.
3. Was it .................................... (rain) hard?
4. You weren't .................................... (talk) to me.
5. I .................................... (am) sleeping at 6 am yesterday.
6. The girl .................................... (were) swimming in the sea.
7. .................................... (Was) they swimming in the lake?
8. She .................................... (eat) lunch at 3:30 pm yesterday.
9. He .................................... (is) studying maths at 7:30 pm yesterday.
10. Was the dog .................................... (run) fast?
11. What .................................... (is) Mona doing at 6 pm yesterday?
12. Ali was .................................... (do) his homework yesterday.
13. Were they .................................... (wear) suits at the party?
14. Where .................................... (are) you yesterday evening?
15. Hend .................................... (isn't) sleeping at 3 pm yesterday.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. listening - He - the - was - radio - to - .

....................................................................................................

2. was - The - drinking - tiger - water - .

....................................................................................................

3. they - a - swimming - Were - lake - in - ?

....................................................................................................

# The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

## Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر

e.g. I eat fruit.

We catch a bus.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + inf. + (s / es / ies)

e.g. - He eats fruit.

- She catches a bus.
- He flies a plane.

## Spelling rules

عندما يكون الفاعل (اسم مفرد ,He, She, It):

- نضيف (es) للفعل إذا انتهى بـ (o, sh, ch, x, ss).

go → goes    watch → watches

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies).

study → studies    fly → flies

- أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف متحرك نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays

## Keywords الكلمات الدالة

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| always | دائمًا | usually | عادة | often | غالبًا |
| sometimes | أحيانًا | every (day, ....) | كل (يوم، ..) | never | أبدًا |

e.g. Dina always plays basketball.

## Negative النفي

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + don't + (المصدر)

e.g. We don't go to school on Fridays.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + doesn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. Ali doesn't fly a plane.

## (Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

**Do** + I / we / you / they / اسم جمع + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

e.g. Do you like fruit? - Yes, I do. - No, I don't.

**Does** + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. (المصدر) ... ?

e.g. Does he drive to work? - Yes, he does. - No, he doesn't.

## Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

**Q.W.** + (do / does) + subject (فاعل) + inf. (المصدر) .... ?

e.g. Where do you live? - I live in Aswan.
e.g. How does he go to school? - He goes to school by bus.

## Must / Mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

Subject فاعل + must + inf. (المصدر)

نستخدم (must + inf) للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء.

e.g. I must do my homework.

Subject فاعل + mustn't + inf. (المصدر)

نستخدم (mustn't + inf) للتعبير عن المنع والحظر.

e.g. You mustn't walk on the grass.

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mrs Soha .................................................... in a school.
   a) are working b) work c) works d) working
2. My sister .................................................... at Mansoura University.
   a) studies b) studying c) were studying d) study
3. We .................................................... computer games at the weekend.
   a) play b) is playing c) playing d) plays
4. I .................................................... yogurt and cheese for breakfast.
   a) is eating b) eat c) eats d) eating
5. Mr. Said .................................................... the bus to Cairo every morning.
   a) catch b) catches c) is catching d) catching
6. He .................................................... a plane.
   a) fly b) flies c) flying d) are flying
7. I .................................................... fruit every day.
   a) is eating b) eat c) eats d) eating
8. He .................................................... vegetables every day.
   a) eat b) eating c) were eating d) eats
9. We .................................................... the bus every morning.
   a) was catching b) catch c) catches d) catching
10. You .................................................... to London every month.
    a) is flying b) flying c) flies d) fly
11. I .................................................... to work at 10 am.
    a) drive b) drives c) were driving d) driving
12. I .................................................... the menu to choose the right food.
    a) check b) checks c) checking d) is checking

13. My mother .................................... me to prepare the vegetables.
 a) are asking  b) ask  c) asks  d) asking

14. I ........................................ the vegetables with a sharp knife.
 a) cutting  b) cuts  c) were opening  d) cut

15. At midday, the manager .................................. the restaurant.
 a) were opening  b) open  c) opens  d) opening

16. We ................................ lots of delicious food for our customers.
 a) cook  b) cooks  c) cooking  d) am cooking

17. Walid ........................................................................ sad.
 a) look  b) is looking  c) looking  d) looks

18. He ........................................ on the ant's door before entering.
 a) knock  b) knocks  c) am knocking  d) knocking

19. I ................................................................ work with animals.
 a) isn't  b) am not  c) don't  d) doesn't

20. What .................................................................... Rana like?
 a) have  b) does  c) do  d) has

21. Ahmed ..................................................... like getting up early.
 a) don't  b) wasn't  c) doesn't  d) isn't

22. My sister ...................................... like talking to new people.
 a) don't  b) isn't  c) hasn't  d) doesn't

23. I ........................................................ traveling long distances.
 a) like  b) was liked  c) likes  d) liking

24. She ............................................................ being indoors.
 a) is liked  b) like  c) likes  d) liking

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس

1. Foxes .................................... (lives) in the desert.
2. She .................................... (eat) fruit.
3. He .................................... (fly) a plane.
4. Mrs Soha .................................... (don't) work in a school.
5. We .................................... (plays) computer games.
6. He .................................... (eat) yogurt for breakfast.
7. I .................................... (doesn't) drive to work.
8. We .................................... (catches) the bus to school.
9. He .................................... (don't) cut the vegetables.
10. I .................................... (checking) the menu every day.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. bank - He - a - in - works - .

....................................................................

2. work - How - morning - you - go - do - every - to - ?

....................................................................

3. computer - the - play - We - games - weekend - at - .

....................................................................

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I .................................... do my homework.
   a) must b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) am
2. You .................................... walk on the grass.
   a) mustn't b) should c) must d) are
3. We .................................... look after the environment.
   a) must b) are c) mustn't d) shouldn't

4. Nadim .................................................. tidy up the kitchen. It's messy.
   a) is   b) must   c) mustn't   d) shouldn't
5. Nahla .................................................. wake her sick brother up.
   a) aren't   b) mustn't   c) isn't   d) should
6. You .................................................. forget to take a hat today.
   a) isn't   b) mustn't   c) has to   d) should
7. I .................................................. buy some oranges.
   a) am   b) must   c) hasn't   d) has to
8. We .................................................. talk in the library.
   a) must   b) mustn't   c) are   d) should
9. He .................................................. clean his bedroom.
   a) must   b) is   c) mustn't   d) shouldn't
10. We .................................................. give the hippo freshwater.
   a) have   b) must   c) mustn't   d) shouldn't

## 5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

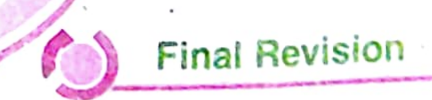
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. You .................................................. (mustn't) wash your hands.
2. You .................................................. (mustn't) be quiet in class.
3. You mustn't .................................................. (walks) on the grass.
4. I .................................................. (mustn't) do my homework.
5. I mustn't .................................................. (talked) in the library.
6. I must .................................................. (helping) my mom at home.

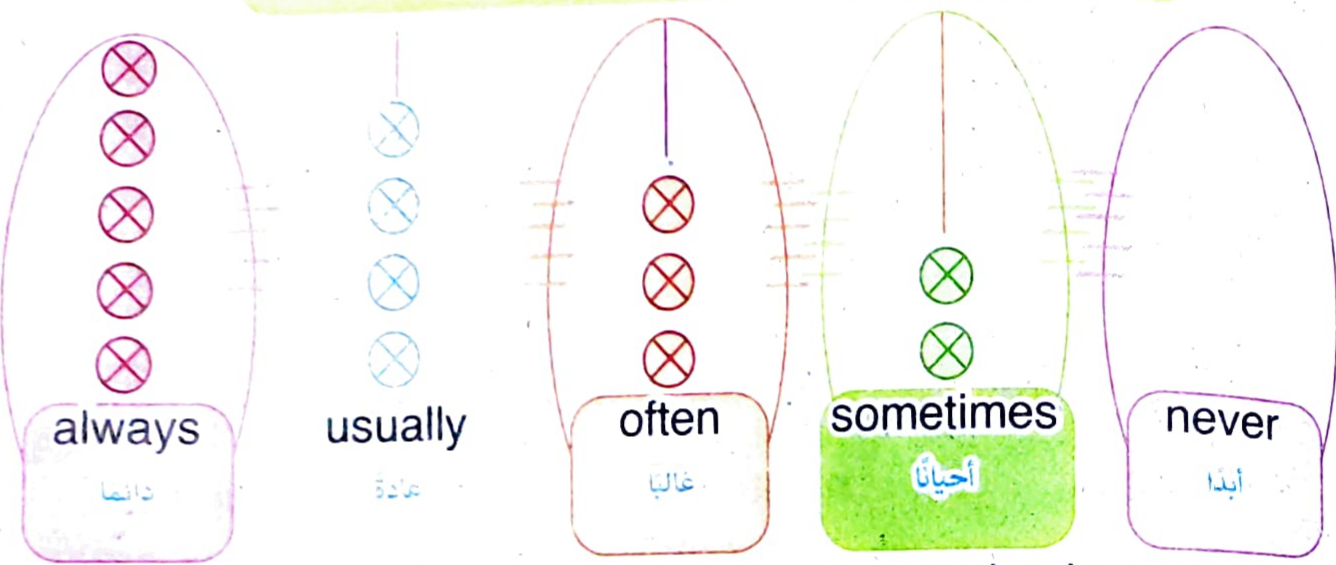
## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل.

1. tidy - She - kitchen - the - must - up - .
..................................................
2. grass - mustn't - You - on - walk - the - .
..................................................
3. some - buy - must - I - oranges - .
..................................................




## Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار




- We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

- The adverb of frequency comes before the main verb.

يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

e.g. - I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- I never go to the park in the rain.

- The adverb of frequency comes after (am/is/are).

يأتي ظرف التكرار بعد "am/is/are".

e.g. I am always in bed at 11 pm.

## How often ... ? كم مرة ....؟

تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

How often + do + (you / we / they / اسم جمع) / does + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + inf. (المصدر)...?

e.g. - How often do you play tennis?
- I never play tennis.
- I always play tennis on Saturdays.

# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How ............................ do you play tennis?
   a) many  b) old  c) often  d) tall
2. I ............................ my grandparents on Saturdays.
   a) always visit  b) visit always  c) always visits  d) visits
3. He ............................ in bed at 11 pm.
   a) always is  b) be  c) never is  d) is always
4. I'm very good at English. I ......... speak English in my English class.
   a) hardly  b) never  c) ever  d) always
5. She ............................ red meat.
   a) never eats  b) eats never  c) eat  d) eat never
6. I ............................ on our balcony on hot nights.
   a) sit often  b) often sit  c) sit never  d) sits
7. I ............................ to the park in the rain.
   a) goes  b) go always  c) never go  d) go never
8. We ............................ before 7 am.
   a) sometimes wake up  b) wake up always
   c) wake up sometimes  d) wakes up
9. I ............................ Mom in the kitchen.
   a) help always  b) always help  c) always helps  d) helps
10. I ............................ eat shawerma. I hate it.
   a) usually  b) always  c) often  d) never

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين القوسين

1. I ________________ (always) play tennis. I can't play it.
2. How ________________ (old) do you read a book?
3. Ola ________________ (never is) tired after work.
4. I ________________ (go never) to the park in the rain.
5. I ________________ (go often) to the cinema on Saturdays.
6. I ________________ (have usually) a sandwich for lunch.
7. She ________________ (eats never) red meat.
8. I ________________ (always am) in bed at 11 pm.
9. I ________________ (play always) tennis on Fridays.
10. He ________________ (gets never) up late.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل

1. tennis - He - plays - always - .

................................................................................................

2. usually - I - strawberries - eat - .

................................................................................................

3. on - visit - often - I - grandparents - Saturdays - my - .

................................................................................................

4. is - He - happy - always - .

................................................................................................

5. is - Heba - never - sad - .

................................................................................................

6. never - I - late - come - .

................................................................................................

7. do - How often - to - go - you - the zoo - ?

................................................................................................

# Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| think | يعتقد / يفكر | thought | eat | يأكل | ate |
| have / has | يملك | had | sell | يبيع | sold |
| buy | يشتري | bought | mean | يعني | meant |
| take | يأخذ | took | give | يعطي | gave |
| put | يضع | put | get | يحصل على | got |
| keep | يحفظ / يربي | kept | see | يرى | saw |
| bring | يُحضر | brought | draw | يرسم | drew |
| meet | يقابل | met | tell | يخبر | told |
| make | يصنع | made | learn | يتعلم | learnt |
| say | يقول | said | grow | يزرع / ينمو | grew |
| throw | يرمي / يقذف | threw | go | يذهب | went |
| find | يجد | found | know | يعرف | knew |
| win | يفوز | won | wear | يرتدي | wore |
| fall | يسقط / يقع | fell | sleep | ينام | slept |
| swim | يسبح | swam | speak | يتحدث | spoke |
| drive | يقود | drove | begin | يبدأ | began |
| show | يوضح / يبين | showed | fly | يطير | flew |
| hear | يسمع | heard | pay | يدفع | paid |
| come | يأتي | came | dig | يحفر | dug |
| teach | يدرس / يعلم | taught | write | يكتب | wrote |
| shine | تسطع / تشرق | shone | spend | يقضي | spent |
| wake up | يستيقظ | woke up | understand | يفهم | understood |
| shut | يغلق | shut | lose | يخسر | lost |
| hurt | يؤذي / يضر | hurt | leave | يغادر | left |
| build | يبني | built | become | يصبح | became |
| break | يكسر | broke | blow | تهب | blew |
| catch | يلحق / يمسك | caught | spread out | يتفرع | spread out |




# WE PLANT OUR FOOD


coconuts
جوز الهند


onions
بصل


limes
ليمون أخضر حامض


beans
فول


pineapples
أناناس


carrots
جزر


chocolate
شوكولاته


lemons
ليمون


eggs
بيض


mango
مانجو


yogurt
زبادى


french fries
بطاطس مقلية


pizza
بيتزا


honey
عسل


almonds
لوز

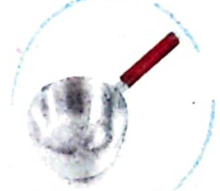

beanstalk
ساق الفاصوليا


giant
عملاق


castle
قلعة


cage
قفص


chop
يقطع


saucepan
قِدر - إناء


knife
سكينة


oven
فرن


cup
فنجان


sugar
سكر

# Vowel sounds الأصوات المتحركة

## short vowels

(a) /æ/

candy mango

(e) /e/

egg

(i) /ɪ/

milk fish

## long vowels

(a-e) /eɪ/

cake bake grapes

(ea) /iː/

bean meat

(i-e) /aɪ/

rice lime

**Some words sound the same but have different spellings.**

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن الهجاء مختلف.

| a-e /eɪ/ | ai /eɪ/ | | ay /eɪ/ | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| cake | rain | tail | gray | play |
| snake | snail | pain | stay | say |

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite fruit is ..........................................................

   a) orange  b) mango  c) apple  d) banana

2. Mango is ..........................................................

   a) healthy  b) unhealthy  c) bad  d) salty

3. We have a mango tree in our ..........................................................

   a) school  b) garden  c) park  d) zoo

4. My .................................... waters the mango tree every day.

   a) friend  b) mother  c) brother  d) father

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Laila is in grade ..........................................................

   a) six  b) three  c) four  d) five

2. Laila .................................................... up at six.

   a) gets  b) runs  c) sleeps  d) eats

3. Laila has her .................................................... with her family.

   a) lunch  b) breakfast  c) dinner  d) snack

4. Laila has .................................................... and fruit salad.

   a) rice  b) beans  c) yogurt  d) fish

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can sell things at the ..........................................
   a) castle  b) market  c) school  d) zoo
2. I .......................................... eggs every day and sell them.
   a) collect  b) eat  c) sell  d) grow
3. What's your favorite ..........................................? - I like chicken.
   a) color  b) sport  c) drink  d) food
4. To cut something is to .......................................... it.
   a) chop  b) mix  c) eat  d) drink
5. A .......................... is a very large building built a long time ago.
   a) cage  b) castle  c) cave  d) school
6. To .......................................... is to pick something up quickly.
   a) pour  b) cut  c) chop  d) grab
7. My mother .......................................... syrup over the basbousa.
   a) bakes  b) pours  c) cuts  d) chops
8. Bake the basbousa in the .......................................... .
   a) knife  b) cup  c) cage  d) oven
9. .......................................... are my favorite fruit. I like to eat them.
   a) Mangoes  b) Onions  c) Carrots  d) Beans
10. The farmer uses his .......................................... to cut the wood.
    a) fork  b) spoon  c) axe  d) saucepan

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

healthy - grows - mango - delicious - garden

Waleed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big ..........(1).......... in the house where his grandpa grows tomatoes, carrots, and onions. There are lemon, lime, and ..........(2).......... trees as well. Waleed's favorite ........(3)........ food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make ......(4)...... juice.

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

bought - tomatoes - store - some - any

Yesterday, Marwa went to the supermarket with her grandma. They needed to buy some ..........(1).........., potatoes, and lemons. Grandma ..........(2).......... two kilos of tomatoes and a kilo of potatoes. But she couldn't find ..........(3).......... lemons. Marwa wanted to buy ..........(4).......... oranges and grapes. But Grandma said they couldn't. Tomatoes and potatoes were all they needed for now.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house where his father grows many different types of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots, and onions. There are lemon, lime, and mango trees as well. Ahmed's favorite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Ahmed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK to eat a little.

A) Choose the correct answer.

- Ahmed lives in a big .................................... with his family.
  a) house b) school c) park d) zoo
- Ahmed likes ...................................., but he knows it isn't healthy.
  a) carrots b) chocolate c) apples d) mangoes

B) Answer the following questions.

- Where does Ahmed's father grow the vegetables and fruits?
  ....................................................................................
- What's Ahmed's favorite healthy food?
  ....................................................................................

## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! My name is Hany. My favorite story is "Jack and the Beanstalk". It's about a young boy called Jack and his mother. They are very poor. Jack wants to help his mother by buying special beans from an old man. One morning, Jack finds a giant beanstalk that reaches up to the clouds. He climbs it and finds a castle. Inside the castle, there is a magic hen that wants to live with Jack. I think it's really an interesting story.

A) Choose the correct answer.

Hany's favorite .................................... is "Jack and the Beanstalk".
a) food b) drink c) story d) poem

Jack and his mother were very ....................................................
a) happy b) poor c) lazy d) sleepy

B) Answer the following questions.

What does Jack find inside the castle? ....................................

What does Hany think about the story? ....................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

any - there - Are - mangoes - the - in - kitchen - ?
.......................................................................................

eggs, - like - would - please - I - some - .
.......................................................................................

me - Thank - you - helping - for - .
.......................................................................................

some - like - grapes - you - Would - ?
.......................................................................................

about - some - How - buying - carrots - ?
.......................................................................................

the - bought - Jack - beans - the market - at - .
.......................................................................................

wanted - sell - Jack - cow - the - to - .
.......................................................................................

favorite - chocolate - Ahmed's - is - food - .
.......................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I would like .................................... (some) orange, please.
2. I have .................................... (a) books.
3. She has .................................... (any) juice.
4. There aren't .................................... (some) vegetables in the fridge.
5. There is .................................... (any) water on the floor.
6. Is there .................................... (a) salad in the dish?
7. I saw .................................... (a) elephant yesterday.
8. We want .................................... (any) tea, please.
9. Would you like .................................... (any) coffee?
10. There is .................................... (some) pen on the table.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

1. can i have a banana, please?

....................................................................................................

2. fareeda's favorite food is chocolate

....................................................................................................

3. my uncle collects fresh eggs every day

....................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: **My favorite food**

(fish - healthy - delicious - rice and salad)

Guiding words: **Mangoes**

(grow - drinks - juice - cocktail - fruit salad)

Unit (2)

# I WANT TO BE HEALTHY!


squash
الاسكواش


karate
الكاراتيه


sailing
الإبحار


kung fu
كونغ فو


football
كرة القدم

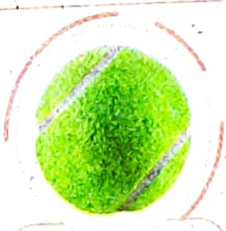

drawing
الرسم

jumping
القفز

handball
كرة اليد

taekwondo
التايكوندو


climbing trees
تسلق الأشجار


tennis ball
كرة تنس


football pitch
ملعب كرة القدم


cooking
الطبخ / الطهي

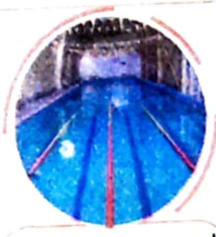

swimming
السباحة


tennis
التنس


karate suit
بدلة كاراتيه


football boots
حذاء كرة القدم


tennis court
ملعب تنس


swimming pool
حمام سباحة


squash rackets
مضارب اسكواش


shade
ظل


breathe
يتنفس

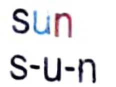

toxic
سام


nightmare
كابوس


medal
ميدالية

# Pronunciation

## - Words with three sounds: الكلمات الآتية بها ثلاثة أصوات:



sun
s-u-n


man
m-a-n


sock
s-o-ck


pen
p-e-n

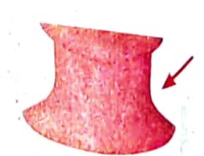

cat
c-a-t


doll
d-o-ll

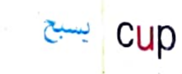

red
r-e-d


fish
f-i-sh


full
f-u-ll


neck
n-e-ck

## - Words with short vowel sound: الكلمات الآتية بها صوت متحرك قصير:



| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| hat | قبعة | swim | يسبح | cup | فنجان | egg | بيضة |
| bat | خفاش | sit | يجلس | pot | إناء | bread | خبز |

## - Words with long vowel sound: الكلمات الآتية بها صوت متحرك طويل:

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| rose | وردة | cry | يبكي | make | يصنع | tea | شاي |
| light | ضوء | so | لذلك | feet | أقدام | cube | مكعب |
| pain | ألم | cone | شكل مخروطي | two | اثنان | fuel | وقود |

## - Words with two syllables: الكلمات الآتية بها مقطعان:

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| spi-der | عنكبوت | ba-by | طفل رضيع | mu-sic | موسيقى |
| tea-cher | مدرس | hu-man | إنسان | ti-ger | نمر |
| ro-bot | إنسان آلي | ho-tel | فندق | E-gypt | مصر |
| pa-per | ورق | de-lete | يحذف | win-dow | شباك - نافذة |
| po-llute | يلوث | ra-cket | مضرب | fi-nal | نهائي |

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1) .................... is one of the most popular sports in the world.

a) Handball b) Volleyball c) Football d) Basketball

2) People play football on ....................

a) pitches b) courts c) pools d) farms

3) Football is one of the most important ...... in the Olympic Games.

a) equipment b) tools c) matches d) games

4) People play football by ....................

a) stick b) foot c) rackets d) goggles

## 2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1) I'm very good at ....................

a) swimming b) football c) tennis d) taekwondo

2) I'm very .................... at tennis.

a) good b) bad c) great d) perfect

3) My brother is bad at ....................

a) taekwondo b) tennis c) handball d) football

4) My brother is .................... at taekwondo.

a) bad b) great c) poor d) worse

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I wear .................................. to play football.
   a) masks b) boots c) gloves d) goggles
2. We play football on a ..................................
   a) pitch b) court c) farm d) pool
3. He bought a racket to play ..................................
   a) taekwondo b) tennis c) handball d) football
4. I wear .................................. to go swimming.
   a) goggles b) a watch c) boots d) socks
5. A .................................. is a bad dream.
   a) tale b) story c) poem d) nightmare
6. When harmful chemicals go into ... , we call this water pollution.
   a) water bodies b) mountains c) factories d) deserts
7. I use .................................. when I play squash.
   a) rackets b) boots c) goggles d) pitches
8. The tennis .................................. is where I play tennis.
   a) pool b) pitch c) court d) field
9. I can do high kicks in ..................................
   a) handball b) kung fu c) tennis d) sailing
10. I play squash with Hani, Hani is my ..................................
    a) racket b) ticket c) prize d) competitor

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

**football - playing - sports - years - good**

I'm Heba. I'm eleven years old. I live in a small family. I have one brother and one sister. I'm good at playing ..........(1).......... and making cakes. I'm bad at ..........(2).......... handball. Hani is my little brother. He is ten years old. He is ..........(3).......... at taekwondo. He likes sports a lot. He practices ..........(4).......... three times a week.



## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

goggles - pitch - boots - football - pool

I like swimming. I wear swimming ............(1)............ to protect my eyes. I always go to the swimming ..........(2).......... on Saturdays. My brother is good at playing ............(3)............ He wears his football ............(4)............ to play with his team. He plays on the football pitch.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "began" means ........................................

   a) started b) ended c) finished d) stayed

2. Hedaya won a/an ........................................ medal in Tokyo in 2021.

   a) gold b) silver c) iron d) bronze

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Hedaya carry at Tokyo Olympic Games?

........................................................................................................

4. When was Hedaya born?

........................................................................................................

## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fish and crabs live in ..................................
   a) land  b) water  c) air  d) sky
2. .................................. chemicals cause pollution.
   a) Harmful  b) Good  c) Great  d) Nice

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ..................................
4. Is water pollution dangerous? ..................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. very - at - good - I'm - swimming - .
..................................
2. is - football - My - brother - bad - very - at - .
..................................
3. is - player - Hedaya - taekwondo - Malak - a famous - .
..................................
4. the - won - medal - She - bronze - .
..................................
5. great - doing - Ahmed - at - jigsaws - is - .
..................................
6. boots - wear - I - play - to - football - .
..................................
7. Egypt - What - in - have - do - sports - we - ?
..................................
8. play - on the - We - tennis court - tennis - .
..................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I can't paint my room. I'm bad at ........................ (paint).
2. My brother is great at ........................ (play) handball.
3. Mona is good ........................ (on) art.
4. Camels are ........................ (bad) at walking across the desert.
5. Hend ........................ (are) good at playing squash.
6. My father is good at ........................ (sail).
7. I'm great ........................ (for) playing chess.
8. Heba is good at ........................ (read).
9. They ........................ (is) good at handball.
10. Ahmed is great at ........................ (swim).

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

1. samy is good at playing tennis

........................................................................

2. what are you watching, ali?

........................................................................

3. she won the bronze medal

........................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A sports biography

Guiding words:

(taekwondo - born - the first - successful - won )

Water pollution

Guiding words:

(chemicals - dangerous - water bodies - kill - lose homes)

# HOW DO I LOOK?


sneakers
حذاء رياضي


sunglasses
نظارة شمسية


coat
معطف


sweater
بلوفر - سترة

ce


umbrella
مظلة



galabeya
جلابية



uniform
زي موحد


pajamas
بيجامة

rf


robe
ثوب



gloves
قفازات


belt
حزام


crown
تاج


ocket
جيب


spotted
مُنقَّط



striped
مُقلَّم


sleeves
أكمام

# PRONUNCIATION

## How to pronounce (ed)

كيف تنطق حرفي (ed) في نهاية الفعل الماضي

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بالأصوات /d/ أو /t/ ننطق (ed) /Id/.

want ⟶ wanted

end ⟶ ended

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بهذه الأصوات /p/ , /s/ , /f/ , /ʃ/, /k/, /tʃ/ ننطق (ed) /t/.

hope ⟶ hoped

fix ⟶ fixed

watch ⟶ watched

laugh ⟶ laughed

wash ⟶ washed

like ⟶ liked

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بهذه الأصوات /b/ , /z/, /g/ , /l/ , /m/, /n/ , /r/ , /v/, vowel suond ننطق (ed) /d/

play ⟶ played

clean ⟶ cleaned

## more examples

مزيد من الأمثلة

| /d/ | /t/ | /Id/ |
|---|---|---|
| called | walked | waited |
| climbed | dressed | studied |
| lived | chopped | needed |

**Listen and write the verbs in the correct group.**

استمع واكتب الأفعال في المجموعة الصحيحة.

- asked
- waited
- promised
- counted
- carried
- slowed
- delivered
- fixed
- tasted

| /d/ | /t/ | /Id/ |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm traveling to .................................................. tomorrow.
   a) Cairo  b) Al Fayoum  c) Aswan  d) Luxor
2. I'm traveling with my ..................................................
   a) family  b) friends  c) classmates  d) neighbours
3. I'm packing my .................................. because I'll be walking around.
   a) dress  b) sweater  c) sneakers  d) shoes
4. Mom is packing her ...... because it can be cold in the evenings.
   a) sunglasses  b) belt  c) sneakers  d) sweater

## 2 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My school uniform is very ..................................................
   a) dirty  b) ugly  c) bad  d) beautiful
2. Girls wear yellow shirts and blue ..................................................
   a) skirts  b) dresses  c) trousers  d) socks
3. Boys wear .................................. shirts and gray trousers.
   a) black  b) yellow  c) white  d) blue
4. Boys have to wear a dark red .................................. every day.
   a) dress  b) sweater  c) tie  d) shirts

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We wear ........................ on our hands in winter.
   a) socks b) shoes c) gloves d) skirts
2. He is ........................ . He has no money.
   a) rich b) happy c) glad d) poor
3. They are ........................ . They won the first prize.
   a) angry b) lazy c) happy d) sad
4. Ahmed bought new swimming ........................ to swim in the pool.
   a) skirts b) socks c) shorts d) coats
5. It's cold, I'll wear my ........................ .
   a) hat b) jacket c) shorts d) necklace
6. Hend wears a crown on her ........................ .
   a) head b) feet c) legs d) hands
7. A ........................ has long white sleeves.
   a) T-shirt b) skirt c) belt d) galabeya
8. My school ........................ is a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.
   a) bag b) uniform c) book d) notebook
9. My mother wears a ........................ around her neck.
   a) bracelet b) sunglasses c) necklace d) hat
9. I wear ........................ to protect my eyes.
   a) sunglasses b) belts c) socks d) gloves

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

wear - stripes - cotton - head - shoes

In my school, everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. We wear white socks and black leather ..........(1).......... I ..........(2).......... a tie. It's dark blue with light blue ..........(3).......... My brother wears a white ..........(4).......... shirt.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

Mexican - colorful - traditional - sombrero - wear

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. They wear a ..........(1).......... . It's a traditional ..........(2).......... hat. Girls wear ..........(3).......... Mexican dresses. There are lots of ..........(4).......... stripes on their dresses.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Girls in Mexico wear colorful dresses during feasts and celebrations. Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero, it's a traditional Mexican hat .There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The main idea of the text is "Mexican ..........................".

   a) food b) books c) clothes d) places

2. The underlined word "protect" means ..........................

   a) destroy b) win c) lose d) save

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do girls in Mexico wear during feasts?

..................................................................

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

..................................................................



## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Mona. I'm ten years old. My favorite clothes are dresses. My favorite color is pink. My dress has two pockets. I love wearing it in parties. I also love wearing a crown on my head for parties. I like to wear gloves on my hands, too.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Mona is ........................................ years old.
   a) nine b) eight c) ten d) six
2. Mona's favorite color is ........................................
   a) blue b) pink c) black d) red

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? ....................
4. What does Mona like to wear on her hands? ....................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. the party - to - Nayera - left - catch - the train - .

........................................................................

2. sleep - to - I - bedroom - went - my - to - .

........................................................................

3. was - The - honest - shoemaker - .

........................................................................

4. is - school - Our - uniform - smart - .

........................................................................

5. wears - shirt - white - a - Everyone - .

........................................................................

6. shoes - night - Who - every - the - made - ?

........................................................................

7. in - popular - is - very - Galabeya - Egypt - .

........................................................................

8. my - need - sneakers - I - pack - to - .

........................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Mona went to town to .................................. (buying) a dress.
2. Ali went to the club .................................. (in) play football.
3. I use my computer to .................................. (did) my homework.
4. I traveled to France to .................................. (learns) French.
5. I .................................. (play) football yesterday.
6. We went to the library .................................. (of) read books.
7. They .................................. (go) to the park last week.
8. My father went to the bedroom to .................................. (sleeps).
9. Hani bought a racket to .................................. (plays) tennis.
10. My mother went to the kitchen .................................. (for) make a cake.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

1. many men in egypt wear the galabeya.

..................................................................................................

2. ali bought a new shirt last week

..................................................................................................

3. aya used a pen to write her essay

..................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Favorite clothing

Guiding words:

(galabeya - sleeves - long - pocket - cotton)

Clothes in Mexico

Guiding words:

(wear - hats - sombrero - girls - colorful)



# Unit (4) LOOKING AFTER OUR WORLD


coral reefs
شعاب مرجانية


forest
غابة


mountain
جبل


lake
بحيرة


waterfall
شلال


island
جزيرة


Alexandria
مدينة الإسكندرية


Dahab
مدينة دهب


Nubian village
قرية نوبية


hiking
التجول على الأقدام

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| local people | السكان المحليون | journey | رحلة |
| eco-tourism | السياحة البيئية | wildlife | الحياة البرية |
| camp | معسكر | eco-holiday | أجازة / عطلة بيئية |
| fascinating | ساحر - خلاب | eco - lodges | مساكن صديقة للبيئة / نزل (بيئية) |
| structure | بناء - مبنى | eco-friendly | صديق للبيئة |
| environment | بيئة | eco-resort | منتجع سياحي بيئي |
| felucca | مركب شراعي | eco-tourists | سياح مهتمون بالبيئة |
| tourist | سائح | monuments | آثار |
| oasis | واحة | reign | عهد / فترة حكم |
| culture | ثقافة | calendar | تقويم |



# *Three consonant clusters*

ثلاثة أصوات ساكنة متتالية

**Some words are hard to say because there are three consonants together.**

بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق وذلك لوجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها.









# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Elephantine Island is the most .................................... place.
   a) fantastic b) bad c) dirty d) ugly
2. Elephantine Island is in .................................... .
   a) Fayoum b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Giza
3. Heba was traveling to the island with her .................................... .
   a) family b) friends c) sisters d) mother
4. Elephantine Island is the .................................... part of Aswan.
   a) oldest b) longest c) fastest d) nearest

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .................................... is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well.
   a) Taba b) Siwa c) Elephantine d) Aswan
2. You can find the Nubian .................................... in Taba.
   a) ibex b) fox c) dog d) cat
3. Eco-tourists can stay in .................................... and eco-lodges.
   a) hotels b) tents c) camps d) boats
4. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, ...................., and camping.
   a) running b) hiking c) fishing d) flying

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Aswan has a .................................................. garden.
   a) boat  b) plant  c) botanical  d) ship
2. There are a lot of coral .................................................. in the sea.
   a) leaves  b) reefs  c) steam  d) roots
3. Eco-tourists stay in small local ..................................................
   a) hotels  b) caves  c) seas  d) rivers
4. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by ..................................................
   a) boat  b) foot  c) bike  d) plane
5. Tourism gives .................................................. for local people.
   a) villages  b) jobs  c) farms  d) homes
6. Eco-tourism helps to .................................................. the wildlife.
   a) buy  b) build  c) protect  d) sell
7. Eco-tourism .................................................. the environment.
   a) looks after  b) destroys  c) damages  d) pollutes
8. "Eco" means relating to the ..................................................
   a) culture  b) language  c) environment  d) water
9. Eco-tourists can enjoy .................................................. in the Red Sea.
   a) diving  b) driving  c) shopping  d) sleeping
10. Taba is my favorite ..................................................
    a) food  b) subject  c) eco-resort  d) drink

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pros - stay - plane - environment - unusual

Eco-tourism is unusual and exciting. It's tourism that looks after the ..........(1).......... and helps local people. Eco-tourism has some ..........(2).........., as it helps the environment. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by ..........(3).......... because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike. They ..........(4).......... in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.





## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

tourism - local - cultures - plane - damage

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. It gives ......(1)...... people jobs. Tourism helps people learn about new ......(2)....... But tourism can also ......(3)...... the environment. It can create too much carbon dioxide from ......(4)...... journeys.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi Dalia! How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the shape! Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d

1. Dalia is on Elephantine ..................
   a) Lake  b) Island  c) Park  d) Zoo
2. Elephantine Island is in ..................
   a) Cairo  b) Giza  c) Luxor  d) Aswan

B) Answer the following questions

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
..................................................
4. What's the oldest part of Aswan?
..................................................

## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Taba is an excellent example of a part of ..............................
   a) USA b) Egypt c) China d) France
2. The underlined word "friendly" means ..............................
   a) brave b) bad c) sad d) kind

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What can you find in Taba? ..............................
4. Is there a wildlife in Taba? ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. was - The - sleeping - fox - .
..............................
2. in - Elephantine - is - Aswan - Island - .
..............................
3. Nagwa - go - Where - did - ?
..............................
4. sad - was - Why - feeling - she - ?
..............................
5. you - a - live - Do - city - in - ?
..............................
6. was - everyone - I - watching - the street - in - .
..............................
7. they - Were - swimming - lake - the - in - ?
..............................
8. gives - local - for - Tourism - people - jobs - .
..............................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I was ................................ (make) a cake yesterday morning.
2. They ................................ (was) watching TV.
3. What were you ................................ (do) at 4 pm yesterday?
4. ................................ (Were) she swimming in a lake?
5. I wasn't ................................ (study) math.
6. Mai ................................ (played) with her cat at 5 pm yesterday.
7. My friends ................................ (was) playing tennis at 10 am yesterday.
8. Were the ................................ (boy) playing basketball?
9. What ................................ (were) the girl doing yesterday evening?
10. How were they ................................ (travel)?

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

1. what is the matter, laila?

................................................................

2. ali was swimming in the sea

................................................................

3. tourists pay for rooms in hotels

................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

**Eco-tourism**

Guiding words:

(plane - train - environment - local - hotels )

**Elephantine Island**

Guiding words:

( last week - visited - oldest - history )

## Unit (5) JOBS WE DO



doctor
طبيب



fisherman
صياد سمك



craftsman
حِرَفي



teacher
مدرس - مُعلم



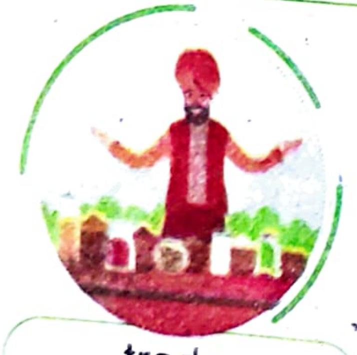
baker
خباز



farmer
مزارع (فلاح)



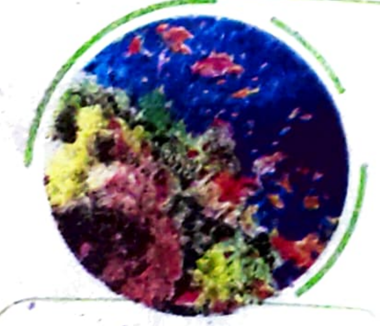
scribe
كاتب



trader
تاجر



a rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئي لبرك المياه الصخرية



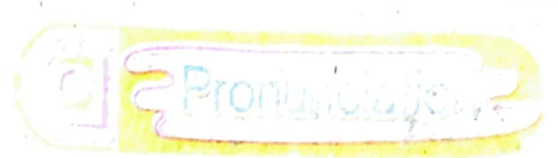
a marine ecosystem
النظام البيئي البحري



a freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة



a desert ecosystem
النظام البيئي الصحراوي




# Diphthongs

الأصوات المزدوجة (المدغمة)

| /aʊ/ | /aɪ/ | |
|---|---|---|
| down | why | boy |
| town | try | enjoy |
| brown | eye | toy |
| mouse | buy | point |
| loud | light | noise |

## Suffix (-ist)

The suffix (-ist) means someone who does something. We often use it in words for jobs.

تشير إلى الوظائف.



biologist
عالم أحياء

journalist
صحفي



receptionist



pianist



scientist

# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want to be a ..........................................
   - a) doctor
   - b) vet
   - c) teacher
   - d) computer programmer
2. I wanted an .......................................... job.
   - a) office
   - b) outside
   - c) outdoor
   - d) easy
3. I don't like to work with ..........................................
   - a) plants
   - b) animals
   - c) people
   - d) rocks
4. I also really like .......................................... problems.
   - a) doing
   - b) making
   - c) solving
   - d) playing

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Walid looks after ..........................................
   - a) hippos
   - b) lions
   - c) monkeys
   - d) tigers
2. He must .......................................... sure hippos are happy and healthy.
   - a) do
   - b) make
   - c) look
   - d) wake
3. He must prepare hippos' ..........................................
   - a) clothes
   - b) bags
   - c) rooms
   - d) food
4. He must give hippos .......................................... water to drink.
   - a) bad
   - b) dirty
   - c) fresh
   - d) salty



## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .................................... was a system of writing in Ancient Egypt.
   a) Photography b) Fishing c) List d) Hieroglyphs
2. .................................... are people who could write and read well.
   a) Scribes b) Farmers c) Traders d) Doctors
3. A .................................... looks after sick people.
   a) teacher b) scribe c) doctor d) trader
4. .................................... made all pots from clay, wood and gold.
   a) Scribes b) Craftsmen c) Doctors d) Traders
5. I don't want to work with animals. They .................................... me.
   a) help b) scare c) entertain d) play
6. I work .................................... when I'm playing football.
   a) alone b) lonely c) only d) in a team
7. A .................................... helps sick animals.
   a) teacher b) vet c) dentist d) scribe
8. If an animal needs a/an .................................... , the room has to be clean.
   a) operation b) food c) drink d) work
9. .................................... is something that isn't alive.
   a) Living b) Non-living c) Rockpool d) Rainforest
10. A .................................... in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold.
    a) trader b) scribe c) vet d) doctor

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

job - operation - injured - farms - animals

My name's Rana. I work with ..........(1).......... and I love my job. If animals are sick or ..........(2).......... , I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an ..........(3).......... , the room has to be very clean. On other days, I go to people's houses or ..........(4).......... to check on the animals.

## Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

win - team - experiments - together - working

I like working in a team in my life. Working in a ........ (1) ........ with people to do something together is useful. I work in a football team to ........ 2 ........ the match. I help my mother to cook ........ 3 ........ in the kitchen. I work with my teammates to do ........ 4 ........ in science lessons.

## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1) People in Ancient Egypt worked very ........ .

a) easily b) hard c) quickly d) badly

2) Farmers planted grains like ........ and corn.

a) oranges b) apples c) bananas d) wheat

Answer the following questions

3) What jobs could people work in Ancient Egypt?

........................................

4) What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

........................................



## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very ............................................ .
   a) sad  b) good  c) bad  d) angry
2. The underlined word "expensive" is opposite to .............................. .
   a) cheap  b) old  c) tall  d) new

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did craftsmen use to weave? ..............................................
4. Was Egyptian writing easy to learn? ..............................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. must - kitchen - Nadim - the - tidy up - .

..............................................................................................................

2. after - hippos - Walid - looks - .

..............................................................................................................

3. do - can - to - What - you - things - make - better - ?

..............................................................................................................

4. ecosystem - is - an - What - ?

..............................................................................................................

5. in - Farmers - fields - work - .

..............................................................................................................

6. a - She - bus -catches - the park - to - .

..............................................................................................................

7. did - the ant - What - during - do - the spring - ?

..............................................................................................................

8. must - about - We - the future - think - .

..............................................................................................................

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I .................................... (eats) fruit every day.
2. She .................................... (catch) the bus to work every day.
3. He doesn't .................................... (flies) a plane.
4. Where does he .................................... (lives)?
5. He .................................... (study) hard.
6. We must .................................... (washes) our hands.
7. We .................................... (must) talk in the library.
8. You mustn't .................................... (walked) on the grass.
9. We .................................... (mustn't) look after the environment.
10. Walid must .................................... (gave) hippos freshwater.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

1. sherif works as a vet

....................................................................................................

2. i must do my english homework.

....................................................................................................

3. i sometimes visit my friend

....................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

**A job you want**

Guiding words:

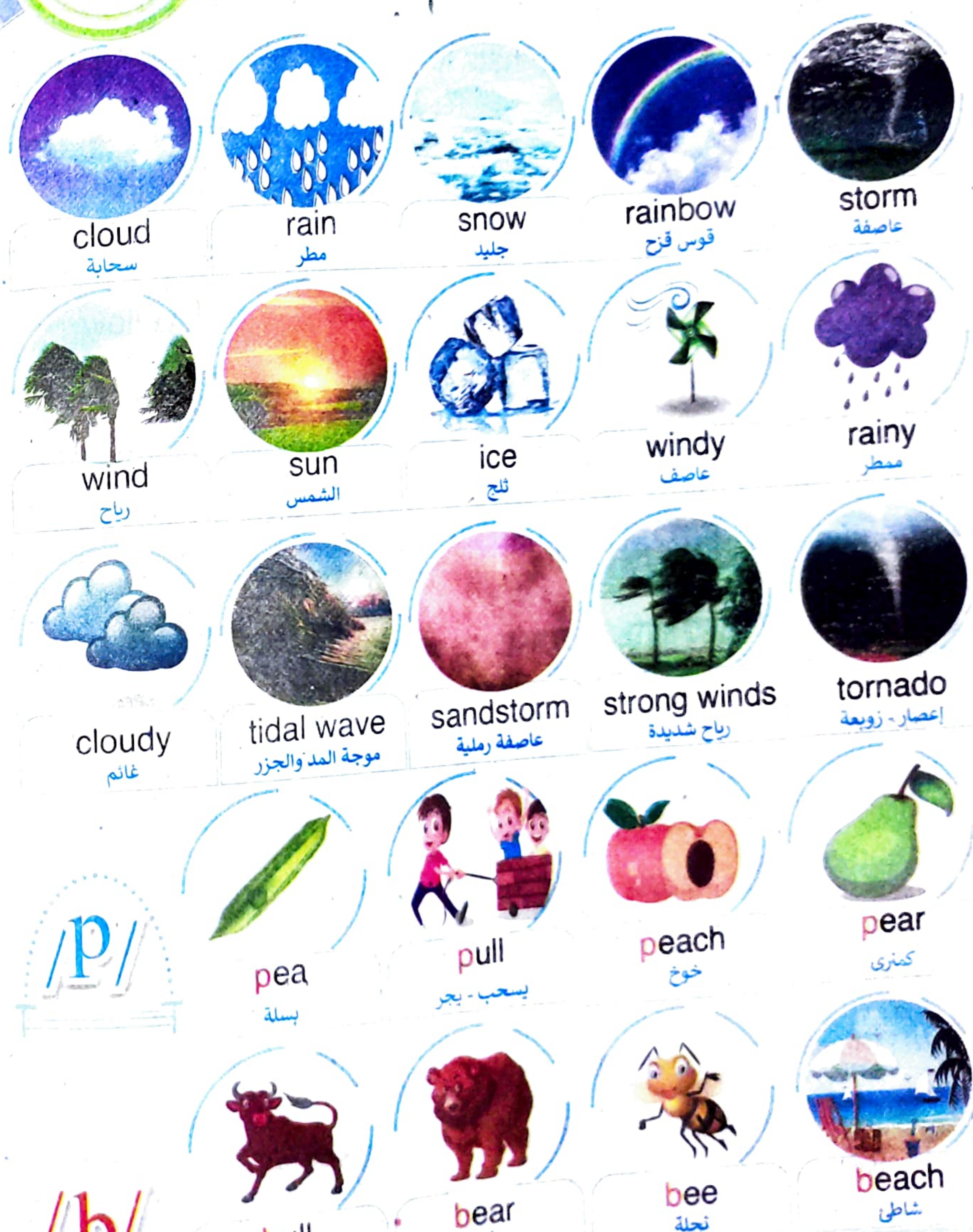
(journalist - traveling - reports - reading - people)

**Teamwork**

Guiding words:

( important - class - experiment - football )

# Unit (6) WHAT'S THE WEATHER LIKE?



# Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Heba was at .................................... with her classmates.
   a) school b) zoo c) library d) park
2. Then it started to get ....................................
   a) light b) heavy c) dark d) yellow
3. They went ....................................
   a) inside b) outside c) in d) on
4. Then Heba saw the .................... and it was very frightening.
   a) sun b) moon c) snow d) tornado

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hend is in grade ....................................
   a) six b) four c) five d) three
2. Hend always .................... up early at 6:30 in the morning.
   a) goes b) gets c) takes d) eats
3. Hend often .................... a short shower, then reads a book.
   a) takes b) makes c) goes d) plays
4. Hend helps her mom make breakfast at 8:00 am in the ..........
   a) bedroom b) bathroom c) kitchen d) garden

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. What's your favorite ........................................ ? - Winter.
   a) year b) season c) day d) week
2. It's ........................................ . It's going to rain.
   a) cloudy b) warm c) sunny d) hot
3. It's usually ........................................ in summer.
   a) ice b) cold c) rainy d) hot
4. It's ........................................ in winter.
   a) hot b) rainy c) warm d) sunny
5. The ........................ destroyed many homes and other buildings.
   a) tornado b) heat wave c) sandstorm d) cloud
6. Don't go ........................................ if there's a sandstorm.
   a) outside b) inside c) room d) home
7. We stayed in the ........................ to avoid the hot sunshine.
   a) storm b) heat wave c) rain d) shade
8. In the desert people try to keep ........................ at night.
   a) cold b) warm c) snow d) icy
9. It's hot in ........................................ .
   a) fall b) spring c) winter d) summer
10. A ........................ is when the temperature goes very high.
    a) storm b) heat wave c) flood d) sandstorm

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

| hot - air-conditioning - light - windows - feel |
|---|

In extreme heat, we should drink lots of water, even if we don't feel thirsty. We should open the ..........(1).........., when there's a cool wind. We should wear ..........(2).........., cool clothing. We should try to spend time in cool building with ..........(3).......... . We shouldn't go outside in ..........(4).......... weather.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

cooler - summers - variety - climate - temperature

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot ..........(1).......... and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 degrees! Our winters are ..........(2).......... . The ..........(3).......... can go down to around 12 degrees. The desert has a very special ..........(4).......... , with very hot days and very cold nights.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The underlined word "high" is the opposite of ...................... .
   a) low b) up c) big d) tall
2. They stayed in the ...................... and tried to drink lots of water.
   a) shade b) sun c) moon d) desert

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did mom ask them to do?

...................................................................................................

4. Why did they buy lemons?

...................................................................................................



## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

It's important to protect yourself in a storm. There might be a power cut in a storm. You should have candles. Contact your friends to check they are safe. Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes. Don't stand near wires, they could give you an electric shock.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. It's important to protect yourself in a ..........
   a) storm b) cloud c) moon d) rain
2. Don't stand near .......... They could give you an electric shock.
   a) candles b) wires c) walls d) friends

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to? ..........
4. What is the main idea of the text? ..........

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوّن جملًا صحيحة.

1. the - go - often - I - to - cinema - .
..........
2. English - She - speaks - always - .
..........
3. weather - What - like - the - is - ?
..........
4. play - often - you - football - How - do - ?
..........
5. football - I - usually - play - .
..........
6. need - to - water - survive - We - .
..........
7. walk - never - to - We - school - .
..........
8. saw - and - I - the tornado - was - it - frightening - .
..........

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. How ............................ (much) do you play football? - I always play it.
2. She ........................................ (plays usually) tennis with her friends.
3. Ahmed ........................................ (always) goes sailing. He can't sail.
4. How often ........................................................................ (do) Ali play football?
5. I ................................ (never) watch TV at night. I watch it every day.
6. He ......................................................................... (always is) in bed at 11 pm.
7. My father ......... (never) takes the bus to school. He takes it every day.
8. ........... (What) often do you go to the club? - I sometimes go to it.
9. I always ........................................ (goes) to the library to borrow books.
10. How often ........................................ (does) your sisters make dinner?

## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

1. how do we keep cool in heat wave

..........................................................................................................................................

2. rawda always speaks English

..........................................................................................................................................

3. sara was driving to the desert

..........................................................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Keeping safe in a heat wave

(drink - wear - cool building - stay inside - outside)

Guiding words: The weather in Egypt

(variety - summer - temperature - winter)

# Exam (1)

محافظة السويس

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Fareeda's favorite food is ..............................
   a) fish b) mango c) chicken d) chocolate
2. Chocolate is .............................. if you eat a lot.
   a) unhealthy b) healthy c) good d) terrible
3. Fareeda's uncle .............................. onion and potatoes.
   a) raises b) grows c) sells d) buys
4. Fareeda's uncle collects .............................. every day.
   a) lemons b) fresh eggs c) trees d) flowers

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An .............................. is a very, very big person.
   a) giant b) farmer c) doctor d) engineer
2. I wear football .............................. to play football.
   a) goggles b) sandals c) boots d) rackets
3. The galabeya is cool because it's made from ..............................
   a) cotton b) plastic c) metal d) paper
4. Tourism gives .............................. for local people.
   a) prizes b) jobs c) books d) planes

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

crops - rare - fields - Ancient - job

People in (1) .............. Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a (2) ............... They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked in (3) .............. which were near their homes. They grew (4) .............. like wheat and corn.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ..........................................
   a) the weather  b) the tornado  c) the school  d) the cloud
2. The tornado was very ..........................................
   a) frightening  b) frightened  c) cute  d) nice

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What did the tornado destroy? ..........................................
4. Summarize the passage in one sentence. ..........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. some - you - Would - bananas - like - ?
2. sister - very - My - is - at - good - poems - writing - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I went to the library .......................................... (borrow) a book.
2. The tiger was .......................................... (drink) water.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

1. i was having breakfast

..........................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Sports

Guiding words: ( favorite - interesting )

# Exam (2)

إدارة أجا التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Who worked at home in Ancient Egypt? ..................
   a) Men b) Children c) Women d) Queen
2. What did they cook? ..................
   a) meals b) cakes c) oil d) juice
3. Whom did they take care of? ..................
   a) their father b) their brother
   c) their mother d) their children
4. Where could they sell baskets? ..................
   a) at home b) at market c) at school d) at hotel

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. It is .................. to eat a lot of chocolate.
   a) good b) healthy c) unhealthy d) useful
2. Eco-tourism is .................. for the environment.
   a) bad b) harmful c) hard d) helpful
3. It is usually cold and .................. during winter.
   a) rainy b) hot c) sunny d) dry
4. The galabeya is very cool because it is made of ...................
   a) leather b) cotton c) plastic d) paper

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

good - rich - healthy - carrots - bad

It is very important to have (1) .................. food. My favorite habit is having a variety of vegetables and fruits. Oranges for example are (2) .................. in vitamin C. All vegetables like tomatoes, (3) .................. and corn have important fibers that our body needs. Never eat unhealthy food. It is not (4) .................. for our health.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My father is a scientist. Last week, he drove to the desert with his friend Ali to find out new desert animals. After ten minutes, they looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. There was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. They closed the windows of the car, but it was very dark. There were other cars on the road. It was good they did not hit them. Suddenly, the sandstorm moved away. They saw the sun again and drove through the desert.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. His father went to the desert by ..................................................
   a) bus b) train c) car d) bike
2. His father is a/an ..................................................
   a) scientist b) engineer c) doctor d) teacher

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why did the father go to the desert? ..................................................
4. What did they see through the window? ..................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. often - do - How - play - you - tennis - ?
2. and - things - Traders - sold - bought - different - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. How about .................................................. (go) to the zoo, Ali?
2. Karim never .................................. (drank) soda, he thinks it is unhealthy.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- She went to egypt to see the pyramids

..................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Guiding elements: Your favorite sport

- Where do you play it? - How often do you play it?

# Exam (3)

إدارة غرب المنصورة

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1) Galabeya is made of ..........................
a) wool b) wood c) gold d) cotton

2) The .......................... are long, so we don't get sunburned.
a) pants b) sleeves c) shorts d) skirts

3) Galabeya has .......................... pockets.
a) clear b) long c) tall d) hidden

4) It is traditional Egyptian clothes for ..........................
a) men b) women c) girls d) children

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1) Laila wants chocolate for ..........................
a) desert b) dessert c) dress d) drums

2) .......................... are good at climbing trees.
a) Lions b) Elephants c) Monkeys d) Tigers

3) Hana went to the kitchen to .......................... a cake.
a) buy b) make c) do d) write

4) Eco-tourism looks .......................... the environment.
a) up b) at c) for d) after

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

oven - delicious - ingredients - spicy - hand

My favorite recipe is basbousa. Mum buys the (1) .......... from the supermarket. She mixes these ingredients by (2) .......... . Then, she bakes the basbousa in the (3) .......... for 30 minutes. She makes the syrup for 10 minutes. Finally, she pours the syrup over the basbousa. It is very (4) ..........

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

We have a nice weather in Egypt. My favorite season is spring. The weather is often warm. The trees become brown and we can see flowers and baby animals. At the weekend, I go to the park and fly my kite. In spring, I wear a jacket in the evening. It sometimes rains, but not for long. In spring we can play a lot of games. We can play football, tennis and other ball games.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The main idea of the text is about the ..........
   a) water  b) pollution  c) weather  d) sports
2. In the evening I wear ..........
   a) jeans  b) shorts  c) a jacket  d) a scarf

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What's your favorite season? ..........
4. Where do you go at the weekend? ..........

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. do - time - you - to - What - want - play - ?
2. like - local - Tourists - learn - to - about - culture - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The shoemaker made .......... (leather , small) shoes.
2. Would you like .......... (any) bananas?

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- craftesmen made beautiful things

..........

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Guiding elements: Healthy and unhealthy food

- What is your favorite food?
- Why is cola unhealthy?

محافظة الأقصر
إدارة الأقصر التعليمية

# Exam (4)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Elephantine Island is a/an .................................................. place.
   a) fantastic  b) bad  c) dirty  d) ugly
2. It's in ...........................................................................
   a) Luxor  b) Giza  c) Cairo  d) Aswan
3. ............................................................................ and tourists visit it.
   a) French  b) Chinese  c) Japanese  d) Egyptians
4. It's a beautiful ...........................................................
   a) mountain  b) lake  c) island  d) tower

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We buy fruits and vegetables at the ..............................................
   a) school  b) zoo  c) market  d) library
2. Eco-tourism helps to ................................................ the wildlife.
   a) protect  b) build  c) buy  d) ask
3. I went outside ........................................................ my friend.
   a) to help  b) help  c) helped  d) helps
4. How often ................................................ you walk to school?
   a) does  b) do  c) is  d) are

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cold - shorts - like - skirt - galabeya

Our uniform is a dark blue (1) .................... for the girls or dark blue (2) .................... for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's (3) .................... , we wear dark vests or jackets. I (4) .................... my uniform!

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruit, too.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a ..........
   a) game  b) computer  c) job  d) car
2. Farmers grow grains like ..........
   a) potatoes  b) tomatoes  c) cucumbers  d) corn

### B) Answer the following questions.

1. How did people in Ancient Egypt work? ..........
2. Where did farmers work? ..........

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. are - swimming - very - We - good - at - .
2. the supermarket - buy - they - did - What - at - ?

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Would you like .......... (any) tea?
2. We .......... (always) go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

1. tourists visit Egypt to enjoy their time ..........

..........

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Sports in Egypt

Guiding words: ( play football - good at )

# Exam (5)

محافظة الأقصر
إدارة أرمنت التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hamza's father is a ..........
   a) doctor   b) tour guide   c) teacher   d) farmer
2. Tour guides show .......... the country they are visiting.
   a) tourists   b) engineers   c) fishermen   d) students
3. Tour guides need to be ..........
   a) bad   b) sad   c) friendly   d) impolite
4. Tourists should have a .......... holiday.
   a) bad   b) terrible   c) awful   d) good

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A .......... is a very large building built a long time ago.
   a) castle   b) cage   c) room   d) box
2. A .......... helps sick animals.
   a) teacher   b) doctor   c) dentist   d) vet
3. I must tidy .......... the kitchen. It's messy.
   a) on   b) up   c) of   d) in
4. We stayed in the .......... to avoid the hot sunshine.
   a) summer   b) heat wave   c) storm   d) shade

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

through - out - sandstorm - air - water

One day, my family and I were driving (1) .......... the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked (2) .......... of the window and saw a (3) .......... soon. There was a lot of sand in the (4) .......... outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex, and rare birds. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The text is about ..........................................................
   a) Luxor  b) Delta  c) Taba  d) Cairo
2. The underlined word "hiking" means ..........................................
   a) sleeping  b) running  c) walking  d) drawing

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What can eco-tourists do with local people? ..........................
4. Eco-tourism works well in Taba. How? ..........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. sleeping - He - yesterday - at - wasn't - night - .
2. is - a - Nader - guide - tour - Hurghada - in - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I would like .................................................... (an) oranges, please.
2. What .................................................................. (do) a mechanic do?

## 7 Punctuate the following:

1. would you like an orange, ahmed?

..........................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements:

- What is this sport?
- Why do you like it?

# Exam (6)

محافظة القليوبية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My friends and I went to ..........................................

a) Aswan  b) Cairo  c) Alexandria  d) Giza

2. We visited ..........................................

a) the zoo  b) the pyramids
d) the Elephantine Island  d) the museum

3. We went there ..........................................

a) yesterday  b) last month  c) today  d) this morning

4. It's one of the greatest .......................... in the River Nile.

a) islands  b) seas  c) lakes  d) canals

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My uncle planted an apple tree in his ..........................

a) office  b) library  c) room  d) garden

2. Camels live in the ..........................................

a) sky  b) sea  c) desert  d) greenhouse

3. Dresses are types of ..........................................

a) sports  b) meals  c) clothes  d) teams

4. Tourism gives .......................... for local people.

a) jobs  b) jokes  c) clothes  d) food

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hot - play - green - park - eat

When I was young, I could go to the (1) ................. I could (2) ................. with my friends. The grass was (3) ................. and the sky was blue. It was lovely to have rain after a very (4) ................. day and I enjoyed so much.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Ahmed. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family in Cairo. I will stay in my uncle's farm in the summer holiday. I will go there to see the flowers he planted in spring. So I won't go to the beach in this summer. I like to draw, so I will buy some crayon, chalk and paper to draw a picture for what I will see because I like painting so much.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ahmed goes to his uncle's .................................................. in summer.
   a) farm b) city c) town d) shop
2. Ahmed will buy chalk and paper because he likes ......................... .
   a) writing b) reading c) drawing d) playing

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why won't Ahmed go to the beach this summer? ..............................
4. How old is Ahmed? ..............................................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. There - tomatoes - aren't - any - the fridge - in - .
2. squash - playing - I - am - at - good - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She didn't .................................... (finishes) her homework yesterday.
2. I like .......................................................... (play) football and basketball.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

1. i usually get up early

..........................................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Guiding elements: Your favorite food

- What's your favorite food? - Do you like healthy food?

## Exam (7)

محافظة الإسكندرية
إدارة المنتزه ثان التعليمية

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian .................................
   a) doctor  b) teacher  c) player  d) singer
2. Hedaya began practicing taekwondo at the age of ................ .
   a) seven  b) fourteen  c) four  d) seventy
3. Hedaya carried the Egyptian ................................ in 2021.
   a) cup  b) flag  c) bag  d) gold medal
4. Hedaya is a very ................................ person.
   a) sad  b) bad  c) mad  d) kind

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We wear ................................ to play football.
   a) suits  b) goggles  c) sneakers  d) rackets
2. Marwa went to the ................................ to borrow books.
   a) wedding  b) market  c) shop  d) library
3. Khalid wears ................................ to protect his eyes.
   a) sunglasses  b) boots  c) belts  d) shorts
4. A ................................ helps sick people.
   a) teacher  b) doctor  c) secribe  d) trader

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

market - lunch - unhealthy - rice - healthy

My favorite food is fish. Fish is (1) ................ . My mother buys fish from the (2) ................ . She cooks it for (3) ................ . We eat fish with (4) ................ and salad.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last weekend, we visited our uncle in Luxor. We went to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. We went to the mosque and said "Eid Mubarak" to our friends. Aunts made delicious cakes with nuts. We ate cakes and drank mango juice. We played with our friends and we bought some presents. It was a nice weekend

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. They ate some ..................................................

   a) candies b) mango c) cakes d) rice

2. It was a .................................................. weekend.

   a) bad b) sad c) nice d) mad

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why did they go to Luxor? ..................................................
4. What did they buy? ..................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. were - They - looking - photos - at - .
2. Mom - fish - cooked - Friday - last - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I .................................................. (play) football yesterday.
2. Eman is good at .................................................. (read).

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- what is your name

..................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Guiding words: Your favorite sport

(sport - club - happy - friends - play)

# Exam (8)

محافظة الإسكندرية
إدارة شرق التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Last Monday was very ................................................................ .
   a) good  b) boring  c) interesting  d) cold
2. I went to Alexandria with my ................................................................ .
   a) family  b) friends  c) sisters  d) uncle
3. We were very ................................................................ .
   a) sad  b) excited  c) bad  d) angry
4. We went to the ................................................................ in the evening.
   a) cinema  b) beach  c) zoo  d) library

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. To ................................................................ is to pick something up quickly.
   a) grab  b) pour  c) cut  d) chop
2. A ................................................................ has long white sleeves.
   a) T-shirt  b) skirt  c) galabeya  d) hat
3. She is good at sports. She's a famous ................................................................ .
   a) athlete  b) doctor  c) teacher  d) vet
4. Water pollution is very ................................................................ .
   a) useful  b) good  c) harmful  d) helpful

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

born - famous - medal - flag - big

Hedaya Malak is a (1) .................... Egyptian taekwondo player. She was one of the two people who carried the Egyptian (2) .................... at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was (3) .................... on April, 1993. She won the bronze (4) .................... at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Hoda. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegatables and hummus for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Hoda's sister has .................................................. for breakfast.
   a) burger b) juice c) vegetables d) fried eggs
2. The underlined phrase "get up" mens ..............................
   a) go up b) wake up c) come up d) look up

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Hoda go in the afternoon? ..............................
4. Summarize the pharagraph in one sentence. ..............................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. walk - You - mustn't - on - grass - the - .
2. never - plays - Mona - handball - Friday - on - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. She is good at .................................................. (swim).
2. My friend .................................................. (live) in Cairo.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- how often does ola listen to music?

..................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Sport

Guiding elements:

- What's your favorite sport?
- Where do you play it?

# Exam (9)

محافظة الجيزة
إدارة الصف التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The shoemaker lived in town with his ............................ .
   a) mother   b) father   c) brother   d) wife
2. They were very poor, but they were ............................ .
   a) sad   b) happy   c) ill   d) angry
3. The shoemaker had a ............................ .
   a) factory   b) school   c) workshop   d) bank
4. The shoemaker had ............................ money.
   a) no   b) much   c) a lot of   d) many

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We use a knife to ............................ vegetables.
   a) buy   b) bake   c) boil   d) cut
2. A nightmare is a bad ............................ .
   a) meal   b) place   c) dream   d) man
3. We wear ............................ on our hands.
   a) socks   b) pants   c) hats   d) gloves
4. There are a lot of coral ............................ in the sea.
   a) leaf   b) reefs   c) leaves   d) roofs

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

medal - flag - born - seven - player

Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian taekwondo player. She was (1) ............................ in 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of (2) ............................ . She won the bronze (3) ............................ in Tokyo in 2021. She was one of the two people who carried the Egyptian (4) ............................ .

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Fares. I live in Sohag. It is usually very hot in Sohag. I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt. A lot of men wear the galabeya. It is a long white robe made from cotton. It is usually white but you can get other colors, too. It has long sleeves so we don't get sunburned. It has pockets but they are hidden. It looks really cool to wear the galabeya for Eid.

A) **Choose the correct answer.**

1. The galabeya has long .................... so we don't get sunburned.
   a) pockets b) shorts c) T-shirt d) sleeves
2. The galabeya is a long white robe made from .................... .
   a) wood b) leather c) cotton d) metal

B) **Answer the following questions.**

3. What is the weather like in Sohag? ....................
4. Who wear the galabeya in Sohag? ....................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. need- we- do- What - to- buy- ?
2. handball- good- She - is- at- playing - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We don't have .................... (some) apples.
2. Adel went to the bedroom to .................... (sleeping).

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- ancient Egyptian women worked at home

....................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Your favorite food

Guiding words:
(chocolate - unhealthy - fish - chicken - mango - good)

# Exam (10)

محافظة سوهاج
منطقة ساقلتة التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian .................... player.
   a) tennis  b) football  c) taekondo  d) handball
2. She started practicing taekondo at the age of .................... .
   a) seven  b) eight  c) nine  d) six
3. Hedaya Malak won the .................... medal.
   a) gold  b) silver  c) bronze  d) fruit
4. She carried the Egyptian flag at the .................... Olympic.
   a) Rio  b) Tokyo  c) London  d) Rome

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My shoes are made of .................... .
   a) gold  b) leather  c) glass  d) wood
2. "Echo" means relating to .................... .
   a) environment  b) school  c) culture  d) home
3. Our school .................... is very colorful.
   a) uniform  b) books  c) bags  d) pens
4. Tourists dive in the Red Sea to see .................... reefs.
   a) sharks  b) plants  c) rocks  d) coral

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

emissions - breathe - healthy - lungs - toxic

I'm Hany. I can't (1) .................... . I know that the air is black and (2) .................... . There are too many (3) .................... from cars. It's dangerous for children's (4) .................... .

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Mariam. I live in Cairo with my father, mother and two brothers. I'm a student in primary five. My father is a doctor in a big hospital. He helps sick people. My mother is a famous English teacher. She helps her students. My brother Sherif is a student.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Mariam is a student in primary ............................................................ .
   a) three  b) four  c) five  d) six
2. Her father is a ............................................................ .
   a) doctor  b) teacher  c) farmer  d) vet

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where does Mariam live? ............................................................
4. What's her mother's job? ............................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. go to - library - We - books - to - read - .
2. grows - potatoes - onions - My uncle - and - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. How ............................................................ (many) do you play football?
2. Tarek is good at ............................................................ (cook).

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- What s your favorite food

............................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Guiding words: Egyptian clothes

(galabeya - traditional)

# Exam (11)

محافظة الجيزة
إدارة كرداسة

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My favorite fruit is ..................................................
   a) mangoes   b) bananas   c) dates   d) eggs
2. We can make a lot of drinks and .................................. with it.
   a) salad   b) dishes   c) meat   d) fish
3. We grow mangoes in our ..........................................
   a) flat   b) school   c) garden   d) class
4. We can also make fruit .................................. and a mango cake.
   a) salads   b) lemons   c) ducks   d) cocktail

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My favorite drink is ..........................................
   a) rice   b) fish   c) milk   d) pasta
2. I play football at the football ..................................
   a) pitch   b) pool   c) court   d) boots
3. .................................. is the most popular hat in Mexico.
   a) Sombrero   b) Gray   c) Tennis   d) Class
4. A .................................. makes shoes and boots.
   a) teacher   b) shoemaker   c) farmer   d) vet

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

famous - born - taekwondo - flag - medal

Hedaya Malak is a (1) .................. taekwondo player. She was (2) .................. on April 21, 1993. She carried the Egyptian (3) .................. at the Tokyo Games in 2021. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She won a bronze (4) .................. in 2016 and 2021.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Ahmed. I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place. It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the Elephantine name, we think it's the shape. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. All the island is full of history. We found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. The text is a bout ..........................................................................
   a) museum b) Elephantine Island c) Thutmose III d) Aswan
2. All the island is full of ..........................................................................
   a) fuels b) history c) pictures d) workshops

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Where is the Elephantine Island? ..........................................
4. What did you find there? ..........................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. do - play - How often - you - tennis - ?
2. really - Our - exciting - school - is - uniform - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We .......................................... (was) watching TV at 9:00 pm yesterday.
2. There isn't .......................................... (some) sugar in my house.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- who is taller, Nader or Mai

..........................................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

My favorite sport

Guiding words:
(football pitch - play with my friends)

# Exam (12)

إدارة نجع حمادي

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Hazem's father is a ..................................................
   a) doctor b) teacher c) tour guide d) vet
2. Tour guide shows .......................... the country they are visiting.
   a) tourists b) engineers c) farmers d) students
3. Tour guide needs to be ..................................................
   a) bad b) sad c) wonderful d) friendly
4. Tourists should have a / an .............................. holiday.
   a) terrible b) bad c) awful d) good

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A: What's your favorite ............................ ? B. Chicken.
   a) color b) subject c) food d) sport
2. I use my ........................................ to play squash.
   a) goggles b) boots c) rackets d) sunglasses
3. Swimming and ........................................ are water sports.
   a) running b) diving c) boxing d) hiking
4. A ........................................ is when the temperature goes very high.
   a) tidal wave b) heat wave c) flood d) sandstorm

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

groups - store - working - amazing - bad

Ants work hard. They never stop (1) .................. . They are tiny but they are clever. They are stronger than humans. They work in summer to (2) .................. food for winter. Really, they are (3) .................. insects because they work in (4) .................. .

## Read the text and answer the questions:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. They were
ccessful. Everyone had a job. Most people worked as farmers.
rmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They used
plant different crops usually grains. The grains were wheat,
rn and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too. Some people
orked as craftsmen. They made beautiful paintings and jewelry.
veryone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life.

**Choose the correct answer.**

Farmers worked in ........................................ near their homes.

a) gardens b) parks c) fields d) mountains

Craftsmen made beautiful ........................................ and jewelery.

a) wheat b) corn c) flax d) paintings

**Answer the following questions.**

3. What did people think about work in Ancient Egypt? ..........................

4. Which grains did farmers plant? ..................................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Friday - do - What - do - on - you - ?
2. children - She - helps - every day - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. How about ........................................ (go) for a walk?
2. They ........................................ (is) at home now.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- hedaya Malak is a famous egyptian taekondo player.

..................................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

Your favorite sport

Guiding elements:

- What is the sport?
- Why do you like it?

# Exam (13)

محافظة الشرقية
إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Eco-tourism is a/an .................................................... idea.
   a) bad   b) ugly   c) exciting   d) weak
2. Sherif is a .................................................... in Hurghada.
   a) trader   b) tour guide.   c) doctor   d) vet
3. He tells the tourists where they can .................................................... .
   a) play   b) walk   c) run   d) dive
4. Normal tourism .................................................... the natural environment.
   a) looks after   b) protects   c) damages   d) saves

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The .................................................... is a box in which we keep animals.
   a) ecosystem   b) cage   c) desert   d) river
2. We stayed in the .................................................... to avoid the hot sunshine.
   a) summer   b) heat wave   c) storm   d) shade
3. I can't climb the garden .................................................... because it is high.
   a) chair   b) fence   c) desk   d) chair
4. Water .................................................... is a very dangerous problem.
   a) population   b) sport   c) wheel   d) pollution

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

robe - hidden - short - long - galabeya

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear the (1) .................... . This is a long white (2) .................... . That is very popular. It looks really cool to wear. It's made from cotton and is usually white. The sleeves are (3) .................... so we don't get sunburned. It has short pockets but they are (4) .................... .

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. It can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It also can kill the birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. We should save as much water as possible. We shouldn't throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The main idea of the text is bout " ................................ pollution".
   a) Land  b) Water  c) Noise  d) Air
2. The underlined word "garbage" means ..........................................
   a) cities  b) boxes  c) paper  d) trash

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What are the water bodies? ..........................................
4. What can polluted water kill? ..........................................

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. tomatoes - about - some - How - buying - ?
2. a gold - She - wants - medal - win - to - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We ................................ (grow always) mangoes in our garden.
2. I have a ................................................ (leather, black) bag.

## 7 Punctuate the following:

- where can samy play tennis

..........................................................................................

## 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

The weather in Egypt

Guiding words:
(nice variety of weather - cool winters)

# Exam (14)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف
منطقة القاهرة الأزهرية

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. We wear a .................................................... -sleeved white shirt.
   a) long   b) short   c) small
2. The girls wear a .................................................... skirt.
   a) gray   b) blue   c) white
3. When it is ...................................................., we wear sweaters.
   a) hot   b) sunny   c) cold

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

chocolate - eat - healthy - favorite

Dina : What's your 1) .................................... food, Fareeda?
Fareeda : It's 2) ....................................................
Dina : I love chocolate too.
But I think it isn't 3) ....................................., is it?
Fareeda : I think it's OK to 4) .............................. a little.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal. Hedaya is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal.

A) Answer the following questions.
1. Who is Hedaya Malak? ....................................................
2. When did Hedaya Malak begin practicing taekwondo? ..................

**B) Choose the correct answer.**

3. Hedaya Malak was born in ..........................................

a) 1991 b) 1992 c) 1993

4. Raja Garmash won the .......................... medal in 2016.

a) gold b) silver c) bronze

5. Hedaya Malak is a very .......................... person.

a) bad b) kind c) dangerous

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. She went to town to .......................... a dress.

a) buy b) buys c) buying

2. Alexandria is a ..........................................

a) town b) city c) village

3. You .......................... walk on the grass.

a) can b) mustn't c) must

4. In a heat wave, we must stay in the ..........................

a) shade b) sun c) storm

5. Nada wants .......................... for dessert.

a) onions b) chocolate c) tomatoes

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. have - we - in - sports - do - Egypt - What - ?

..........................................

2. a racket - Ahmed - to - tennis - bought - play - .

..........................................

3. have - good - you - Did - a - trip - ?

..........................................

4. play - We - games - computer - the - at - weekend - .

..........................................

5. is - like - weather - the - What - ?

..........................................

# Exam (15)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف
منطقة الإسكندرية الأزهرية

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Fares is ........................................................ years old.
   a) five  b) ten  c) four
2. He has got ........................................................ brothers.
   a) three  b) two  c) one
3. They go to the park on ........................................................ .
   a) Saturday  b) Tuesday  c) Friday

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

Yes - vet - do - animals

Ahmed : What job do you want to 1) .......... when you grow up?

Omar : I want to be a 2) ........................................................ .

Ahmed : Do you like 3) ........................................ ?

Omar : 4) ........................................................ , I do.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian sports person. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

**A) Answer the following questions.**

1. What is Hedaya's sport?

........................................................................................................

2. When was she born?

........................................................................................................





**B) Choose the correct answer.**

3. She began practicing .................................... at the age of seven.
   a) taekwondo   b) football   c) tennis
4. Hedaya carried her country's .................................... in 2021.
   a) cup   b) club   c) flag
5. She won the bronze .................................... in Tokyo in 2021.
   a) necklace   b) medal   c) glasses

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. Candies and cola are .................................... .
   a) healthy   b) fresh   c) unhealthy
2. The weather is .................................... . It's very hot.
   a) windy   b) sunny   c) cloudy
3. I wear .................................... to protect my eyes.
   a) sunglasses   b) gloves   c) crown
4. She's good at .................................... poems.
   a) write   b) writing   c) wrote
5. Are there .................................... carrots?
   a) an   b) some   c) any

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. sleep - I - late - never - .

....................................................................................................

2. an orange - Would - like - you - ?

....................................................................................................

3. red - sweater - I'll - pack - my - .

....................................................................................................

4. very - summers - We - hot - have - .

....................................................................................................

5. hard - must - work - You - .

....................................................................................................

# Exam (16)

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Magdi is a ..........................................................
   a) dentist  b) zookeeper  c) farmer
2. Magdi looks after ..........................................................
   a) monkeys  b) lions  c) hippos
3. .......................................................... is important for animals.
   a) Water  b) Milk  c) Fruit

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

wear - celebrate - striped - skirt

A : What are your favorite clothes?

B : I've got a 1) .............................. dress and a 2) ..............................

A : When do you 3) .............................................. them?

B : I wear them to 4) .............................. Sham El-Nessim.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ahmed is my brother. He is a good boy. He is 15 years old. He wakes up at seven o'clock every day. In the morning, we have breakfast with the family. He helps his mother cook breakfast. In the afternoon, he helps his father on the farm. He likes playing football on Fridays. He plays it in the club with his friends. In the evening, they like listening to stories from their father.

### A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ahmed helps his father on the farm in the ..............................
   a) morning  b) afternoon  c) evening
2. In the morning we have ..............................
   a) breakfast  b) dinner  c) lunch
3. Ahmed wakes up at .............................................. o'clock.
   a) 7  b) 9  c) 10

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Where does Ahmed play football?

.................................................................................................

5. When do they listen to the stories?

.................................................................................................

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I always ............................................ to the club on Saturday.
   a) goes  b) go  c) going
2. I go to school ............................................ bike.
   a) in  b) by  c) with
3. I can carry this heavy bag. I'm ............................................ .
   a) weak  b) strong  c) strange
4. I wore sunglasses to protect my ............................................ .
   a) ears  b) eyes  c) hands
5. Women wear ............................................ around their necks.
   a) coats  b) sweets  c) necklaces

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. made - leather - The - shoes - shoemaker - .

.................................................................................................

2. doing - are - What - you - ?

.................................................................................................

3. practicing - She - hard - is - .

.................................................................................................

4. are - jumping - Cats - at - good - .

.................................................................................................

5. is - tour - Sherif - guide - a - .

.................................................................................................

# Exam (17)

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. The winning team scores the most ..............................
   a) matches b) goals c) ball
2. People play football on ..............................
   a) matches b) pitches c) beaches
3. A football team has .............................. players.
   a) twelve b) eleven c) eighteen

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

grapes - Would - some - buying

Seller : Hello! 1).............................. you like some bananas?
Ali : No, thank you. I would like some 2)..............................
Seller : How about 3).............................. some oranges?
Ali : Yes, I would like 4)..............................

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Seif. I'm 10 years old. I'm in grade five. I live with my family in Cairo. My school uniform is a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. When it is cold, we can wear our blue sweaters.

**A) Choose the correct answer.**

1. Seif is .............................. years old.
   a) five b) ten c) sixteen
2. The girls wear a blue ..............................
   a) trousers b) socks c) skirt
3. When it is cold, they wear blue ..............................
   a) skirts b) sweaters c) shorts

**B) Answer the following questions.**

4. Which grade is Seif in?

........................................................................

5. What are the colors of the school uniform?

........................................................................

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I was traveling by .................................... to the island.
   a) boat b) foot c) metro
2. Tourism gives .................................... for local people.
   a) food b) jobs c) sports
3. Aser is good at .................................... tennis.
   a) play b) playing c) plays
4. I had a bad dream, it was a .................................... .
   a) nightmare b) green house c) emissions
5. Basel .................................... take his bag last week.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. went - I - my - to - sleep - bedroom - to - .

........................................................................

2. He - with - in - lived - town - wife - his - .

........................................................................

3. Mexican - hats - wear - people - .

........................................................................

4. wearing - Soha - a - is - dress - spotted - .

........................................................................

5. coffee - like - you - Would - some - ?

........................................................................

# Exam (18)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف
منطقة سوهاج الأزهرية

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. My sister is Nada, she is wearing .................................... clothes.
   a) beautiful b) bad c) nice
2. She is wearing .................................... gloves.
   a) red b) black c) white
3. Nada's dress is .................................... .
   a) dotted b) spotted c) plain

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

unhealthy - like - eat - chocolate

Ali : What's your favorite food, Ahmed?

Ahmed : Oh! That's easy. It's 1) ....................................

Ali : I like chocolate too. But I think it's 2) ....................................

Ahmed : Yes, but it's OK if you 3) .................................... a little.

Ali : What's your favorite healthy food?

Ahmed : I 4) .................................... chicken and fish.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Uncle Samy takes his family to the park every Friday. There, he plays with his children. They play football. The mother makes a lot of sandwiches. They have lunch and eat ice-cream. In the park, they can see birds flying and lots of flowers and trees.

**A) Answer the following questions.**

1. Where does uncle Samy take his family every Friday?

....................................................................................................

2. What can they see in the park?

....................................................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer.

Uncle Samy plays with his .................................... in the park.

a) children b) parents c) brothers

The mother makes ....................................

a) cakes b) sandwiches c) ice-cream

They can see .................................... flying.

a) ducks b) dogs c) birds

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

I would like .................................... orange, please.

a) a b) an c) any

The children are playing in the .................................... of a tree.

a) shade b) emission c) green-house

We were .................................... in the sea in the evening.

a) swim b) swam c) swimming

A .................................... is a box in which we keep animals.

a) cage b) castle c) storm

I mustn't .................................... on the grass.

a) walks b) walking c) walk

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

They - and - fruits - planted - vegetables - last week - .

....................................................................................................

in - Aswan - live - Do - you - ?

....................................................................................................

red - sweater - I'll - pack - my - .

....................................................................................................

to - They - listening - music - were - .

....................................................................................................

sports - are - at - What - you - good - ?

....................................................................................................

# Exam (19)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف
منطقة الشرقية الأزهرية

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Hend likes ........................................, but she doesn't like meat.
   a) chicken    b) fish    c) beans
2. She collects eggs every ........................................ .
   a) day    b) month    c) year
3. Her best drink is ........................................ juice.
   a) mango    b) orange    c) lemon

## 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words in the box:

match - at - watching - than

Shahd : What are you doing?
Nader : I'm 1)............... a football match between Al-Ahly and Zamalek.
Shahd : Is the 2)............................ boring or interesting?
Nader : It's a very interesting match.
Shahd : Are you good 3)............................ football?
Nader : Yes, but I'm better at tennis 4)............... I'm at football.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

One night, a shoemaker was in his workshop. He was very tired. He didn't make any shoes. In the morning he was surprised because he found five shoes on the table. He sold them and got a lot of money. His wife made him a delicious meal for dinner. The following night, he discovered that two elves made the shoes. He thanked the elves by making them new clothes.

**A) Answer the following questions.**

1. Why didn't the shoemaker make any shoes? ........................................
2. Who made the shoes? ........................................

## B) Choose the correct answer.

3. The shoemaker found five .................................... on the table.
   a) books  b) shoes  c) elves
4. His wife made him a delicious meal of .................................... .
   a) lunch  b) breakfast  c) dinner
5. The shoemaker made new clothes for .................................... .
   a) his wife  b) the elves  c) himself

## 4 Choose the correct answer.

1. The air is black and .................................... . I can't breathe.
   a) white  b) nice  c) toxic
2. I need new swimming .................................... .
   a) goggles  b) boots  c) belts
3. We .................................... for old things when we fell down.
   a) look  b) looked  c) were looking
4. He never .................................... to the park in the rain.
   a) go  b) going  c) goes
5. I wore a galabeya to .................................... cool.
   a) stayed  b) staying  c) stay

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. some - about - How - buying - grapes - ?

....................................................................................................

2. is - making - very - He - at - bad - cakes - .

....................................................................................................

3. last - Port Said - My - traveled - grandma - weekend - to - .

....................................................................................................

4. is - hard - The ant - working - to - for winter - prepare - .

....................................................................................................

5. sunny - is - here - very - It - this week - .

....................................................................................................

# Listening Texts

## Unit (1)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

My favorite fruit is mango. It's healthy. We have a mango tree in our garden. My father waters the mango tree every day. When it grows, we eat some mangoes and sell some of them at the market. They are delicious fruit.

**2) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

I'm Laila. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames.

## Unit (2)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. People like it very much. People play football on pitches. It is one of the most important games in the Olympic Games since 1900. People play football by foot only, but the goalkeeper is the only player who can hold the ball with his / her hands.

**2) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

I'm very good at swimming. I'm in the school team! But I'm very bad at tennis. My brother is bad at football. He is great at taekwondo.

## Unit (3)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

I am traveling to Al Fayoum tomorrow. I am traveling with my family. I need to pack our suitcases. I am packing my sneakers because I'll be walking around. Mom is packing her sweater because it can be cold in the evenings.

**2) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

My school uniform is very beautiful. Girls wear yellow shirts and blue skirts. Boys wear white shirts and gray trousers. Boys have to wear a dark red tie every day. Boys and girls wear black shoes and white socks. We all wear red sweaters in winter. I like my school uniform so much.

## Unit (4)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

I'm Heba. I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. We think it's the shape! Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.

**2) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping.

## Unit (5)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

I want to be a computer programmer. I wanted an office job. I don't like to work with animals. I don't like being outside. I like playing computer games. I also really like solving problems.

**2) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!

## Unit (6)

**1) Listen and circle the correct answer:**

Heba was at school with her classmates. Then it started to get dark. They went outside. Then Heba saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near them, it was getting bigger.

2) Listen and circle the correct answer:

Hend is an active girl. She is in grade five. She always gets up early at 6.30 in the morning. She often takes a short shower, then she reads a book. She helps her mom make breakfast at 8.00 am in the kitchen.

## Exam (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Fareeda's favorite food is chocolate. Chocolate is unhealthy if you eat a lot. Fareeda's uncle grows onion and potatoes. Fareeda's uncle collects fresh eggs every day.

## Exam (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Who worked at home in Ancient Egypt? Women. What did they cook? meals. Whom did they take care of? their children. Where could they sell baskets? at market.

## Exam (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Galabeya is made of cotton. The sleeves are long, so we don't get sunburned. Galabeya has hidden pockets. It is traditional Egyptian clothes for men.

## Exam (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Elephantine Island is a fantastic place. It's in Aswan. Egyptians and tourists visit it. It's a beautiful island.

## Exam (5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hamza's father is a tour guide. Tour guides show tourists the country they are visiting. Tour guides need to be friendly. Tourists should have a good holiday.

## Exam (6)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My friends and I went to Aswan. We visited the Elephantine Island. We went there last month. It's one of the greatest Islands in the River Nile.

## Exam (7)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian player. Hedaya began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. Hedaya carried the Egyptian flag in 2021. Hedaya is a very kind person.

## Exam (8)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last Monday was very interesting. I went to Alexandria with my family. We were very excited. We went to the cinema in the evening.

## Exam (9)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

The shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker had a workshop. The shoemaker had no money.

## Exam (10)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekondo player. She started practicing taekondo at the age of seven. Hedaya Malak won the bronze medal. She carried the Egytian flag at the Tokyo Olympic.

## Exam (11)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

My favorite fruit is mangoes. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We grow mangoes in our garden. We can also make fruit salads and a mango cake.

## Exam (12)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hazem's father is a tour guide. Tour guide shows tourists the country they are visiting. Tour guide needs to be friendly. Tourists should have a good holiday.

## Exam (13)

- Listen and circle the correct answer.

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. He tells the tourists where they can dive. Normal tourism damages the natural environment.

## Exam (14)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Our uniform is smart. We like it. We wear a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt. We wear white socks. When it is cold, we wear sweaters.

## Exam (15)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Fares is ten years old. He has got two brothers. They go to the park on Friday. He plays with his friends. He likes football. He always it in the club on Friday.

## Exam (16)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Magdi is a zookeeper. He works in the zoo. He looks after monkeys. He gives them food and water. Water is important for animals.

## Exam (17)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The winning team scores the most goals. People play football on pitches. A football team has eleven players.

## Exam (18)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

My sister is Nada, she is wearing beautiful clothes. She is wearing white gloves. Nada's dress is spotted. She is wearing a crown on her head.

## Exam (19)

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hend likes fish, but she doesn't like meat. She collects eggs every day. Her best drink is mango juice. She has a mango tree in her garden.